



## Hard disk drive specifications

# Deskstar 60GXP

3.5 inch Ultra ATA/100 hard disk drive

Models: IC35L010AVER07  
IC35L020AVER07  
IC35L030AVER07  
IC35L040AVER07  
IC35L060AVER07



---

Revision 2.2

1 May 2002





## Hard disk drive specifications

# Deskstar 60GXP

3.5 inch Ultra ATA/100 hard disk drive

Models: IC35L010AVER07  
IC35L020AVER07  
IC35L030AVER07  
IC35L040AVER07  
IC35L060AVER07



---

Revision 2.2

1 May 2002

**1st Edition (Revision 0.1) S07N-4780-00 ( 4 January 2001) Preliminary**  
**2nd Edition (Revision 0.2) S07N-4780-00 ( 11 January 2001) Preliminary**  
**3rd Edition (Revision 0.3) S07N-4780-00 ( 12 January 2001) Preliminary**  
**4th Edition (Revision 0.4) S07N-4780-00 ( 17 January 2001) Preliminary**  
**5th Edition (Revision 0.5) S07N-4780-00 ( 22 January 2001) Preliminary**  
**6th Edition (Revision 1.0) S07N-4780-01 (29 January 2001)**  
**7th Edition (Revision 2.0) S07N-4780-02 (1 February 2001)**  
**8th Edition (Revision 2.1) S07N-4780-03 (27 August 2001)**  
**9th Edition (Revision 2.2) S07N-4780-04 (1 May 2002)**

**The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:** INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION “AS IS” WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer or express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This publication could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time.

It is possible that this publication may contain reference to, or information about, IBM products (machines and programs), programming, or services that are not announced in your country. Such references or information must not be construed to mean that IBM intends to announce such IBM products, programming, or services in your country.

Technical information about this product is available by contacting your local IBM representative or on the Internet at <http://www.ibm.com/harddrive>

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries in writing to the IBM Director of Commercial Relations, IBM Corporation, Armonk, NY 10577.

**©Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 2002. All rights reserved.**

Note to U.S. Government Users —Documentation related to restricted rights —Use, duplication or disclosure is subject to restrictions set forth in GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

---

## Table of contents

|  |    |
|--|----|
| <b>List of Figures</b> .....                             | ix |
| <b>1.0 General</b> .....                                 | 1  |
| 1.1 Glossary .....                                       | 1  |
| 1.2 General caution .....                                | 1  |
| 1.3 References .....                                     | 1  |
| <b>2.0 General features</b> .....                        | 3  |
| <b>Part 1. Functional specification</b> .....            | 5  |
| <b>3.0 Fixed disk subsystem description</b> .....        | 7  |
| 3.1 Control Electronics .....                            | 7  |
| 3.2 Head disk assembly .....                             | 7  |
| 3.3 Actuator .....                                       | 7  |
| <b>4.0 Fixed disk characteristics</b> .....              | 9  |
| 4.1 Formatted capacity .....                             | 9  |
| 4.2 Data sheet .....                                     | 9  |
| 4.3 Performance Characteristics .....                    | 10 |
| 4.3.1 Command Overhead .....                             | 10 |
| 4.3.2 Mechanical positioning .....                       | 10 |
| 4.3.3 Drive ready time .....                             | 12 |
| 4.3.4 Data Transfer Speed—60 GB model .....              | 13 |
| 4.3.5 Buffering Operation (Look ahead/Write cache) ..... | 13 |
| 4.3.6 Throughput .....                                   | 13 |
| 4.3.7 Operating modes .....                              | 15 |
| 4.3.8 Mode transition times .....                        | 15 |
| <b>5.0 Defect flagging strategy</b> .....                | 17 |
| <b>6.0 Data integrity</b> .....                          | 19 |
| 6.1 Data loss at Power off .....                         | 19 |
| 6.2 Write cache .....                                    | 19 |
| 6.3 Equipment status .....                               | 19 |
| <b>7.0 File Organization</b> .....                       | 21 |
| 7.1 File format .....                                    | 21 |
| 7.2 Cylinder allocation .....                            | 21 |
| <b>8.0 Defect flagging strategy</b> .....                | 23 |
| 8.1 Shipped format .....                                 | 23 |
| <b>9.0 Specification</b> .....                           | 25 |
| 9.1 Electrical interface .....                           | 25 |
| 9.1.1 Connector location .....                           | 25 |
| 9.1.2 Signal definition .....                            | 26 |
| 9.1.3 Interface logic signal levels .....                | 29 |
| 9.1.4 Reset timings .....                                | 29 |
| 9.1.5 PIO timings .....                                  | 30 |
| 9.1.6 Multiword DMA timings .....                        | 31 |
| 9.1.7 Ultra DMA timings .....                            | 32 |
| 9.1.8 Addressing of registers .....                      | 40 |
| 9.1.9 Cabling .....                                      | 40 |
| 9.1.10 Jumper settings .....                             | 41 |
| 9.2 Environment .....                                    | 47 |

|  |  |           |
|--|--|-----------|
| 9.2.1                                  | Temperature and humidity                               | 47        |
| 9.2.2                                  | Corrosion test   | 48        |
| 9.3                                    | DC power requirements                                  | 48        |
| 9.3.1                                  | Input voltage  | 48        |
| 9.3.2                                  | Power supply current—typical                           | 48        |
| 9.3.3                                  | Power supply generated ripple at drive power connector | 49        |
| 9.3.4                                  | Start up current                                       | 49        |
| 9.3.5                                  | Energy consumption efficiency                          | 50        |
| 9.4                                    | Reliability  | 50        |
| 9.4.1                                  | Data integrity   | 50        |
| 9.4.2                                  | Cable noise interference                               | 50        |
| 9.4.3                                  | Start/stop cycles                                      | 50        |
| 9.4.4                                  | Life   | 50        |
| 9.4.5                                  | Preventive maintenance                                 | 50        |
| 9.4.6                                  | Data reliability                                       | 51        |
| 9.5                                    | Mechanical specifications                              | 51        |
| 9.5.1                                  | Physical dimensions                                    | 51        |
| 9.5.2                                  | Mounting holes   | 52        |
| 9.5.3                                  | Connector and jumper description                       | 53        |
| 9.5.4                                  | Drive mounting   | 53        |
| 9.5.5                                  | Head unload and actuator lock                          | 53        |
| 9.6                                    | Vibration and shock                                    | 54        |
| 9.6.1                                  | Operating vibration                                    | 54        |
| 9.6.2                                  | Nonoperating vibration                                 | 54        |
| 9.6.3                                  | Operating shock  | 55        |
| 9.6.4                                  | Nonoperating shock                                     | 55        |
| 9.6.5                                  | Rotational shock                                       | 56        |
| 9.7                                    | Acoustics—Unit Sound Power level testing               | 56        |
| 9.8                                    | Identification—labels                                  | 57        |
| 9.9                                    | Safety   | 57        |
| 9.9.1                                  | UL and CSA standard conformity                         | 57        |
| 9.9.2                                  | IEC compliance   | 57        |
| 9.9.3                                  | German Safety Mark                                     | 57        |
| 9.9.4                                  | Flammability   | 58        |
| 9.9.5                                  | Safe handling  | 58        |
| 9.9.6                                  | Environment  | 58        |
| 9.9.7                                  | Secondary circuit protection                           | 58        |
| 9.10                                   | Electromagnetic compatibility                          | 58        |
| 9.11                                   | CE Mark  | 59        |
| 9.12                                   | C-Tick Mark  | 59        |
| <b>Part 2. Interface specification</b> |  | <b>61</b> |
| <b>10.0</b>                            | <b>General</b>   | <b>63</b> |
| 10.1                                   | Introduction   | 63        |
| 10.2                                   | Terminology  | 63        |
| <b>11.0</b>                            | <b>Deviations from standard</b>                        | <b>65</b> |
| <b>12.0</b>                            | <b>Registers</b>                                       | <b>67</b> |
| 12.1                                   | Alternate Status Register                              | 68        |
| 12.2                                   | Command Register                                       | 68        |
| 12.3                                   | Cylinder High Register                                 | 68        |
| 12.4                                   | Cylinder Low Register                                  | 68        |
| 12.5                                   | Data Register  | 69        |
| 12.6                                   | Device Control Register                                | 69        |

|             |   |           |
|-------------|---|-----------|
| 12.7        | Drive Address Register                          | 69        |
| 12.8        | Device/Head Register                            | 70        |
| 12.9        | Error Register                                  | 70        |
| 12.10       | Features Register                               | 71        |
| 12.11       | Sector Count Register                           | 71        |
| 12.12       | Sector Number Register                          | 71        |
| 12.13       | Status Register                                 | 72        |
| <b>13.0</b> | <b>General operation</b>                        | <b>75</b> |
| 13.1        | Reset response                                  | 75        |
| 13.2        | Register initialization                         | 76        |
| 13.3        | Diagnostic and Reset considerations             | 77        |
| 13.4        | Sector Addressing Mode                          | 78        |
| 13.4.1      | Logical CHS Addressing Mode                     | 78        |
| 13.4.2      | LBA Addressing Mode                             | 78        |
| 13.5        | Overlapped and queued feature                   | 79        |
| 13.6        | Power management feature                        | 80        |
| 13.6.1      | Power modes                                     | 80        |
| 13.6.2      | Power management commands                       | 80        |
| 13.6.3      | Standby timer                                   | 80        |
| 13.6.4      | Interface capability for power modes            | 81        |
| 13.7        | S.M.A.R.T. function                             | 81        |
| 13.7.1      | Attributes                                      | 81        |
| 13.7.2      | Attribute values                                | 81        |
| 13.7.3      | Attribute thresholds                            | 81        |
| 13.7.4      | Threshold Exceeded Condition                    | 82        |
| 13.7.5      | S.M.A.R.T. commands                             | 82        |
| 13.7.6      | Off-line read scanning                          | 82        |
| 13.7.7      | Error log                                       | 82        |
| 13.7.8      | Self-test                                       | 82        |
| 13.8        | Security Mode Feature Set                       | 82        |
| 13.8.1      | Security mode                                   | 83        |
| 13.8.2      | Security level                                  | 83        |
| 13.8.3      | Passwords                                       | 83        |
| 13.8.4      | Operation example                               | 83        |
| 13.8.5      | Command table                                   | 87        |
| 13.9        | Host Protected Area Function                    | 88        |
| 13.9.1      | Example for operation (in LBA mode)             | 88        |
| 13.9.2      | Security extensions                             | 89        |
| 13.10       | Seek Overlap                                    | 90        |
| 13.11       | Write cache function                            | 91        |
| 13.12       | Reassign Function                               | 91        |
| 13.13       | Auto Reassign Function                          | 91        |
| 13.13.1     | Nonrecovered write errors                       | 91        |
| 13.13.2     | Nonrecovered read errors                        | 91        |
| 13.13.3     | Recovered read errors                           | 92        |
| 13.14       | Power-Up In Standby feature set                 | 92        |
| 13.15       | Advanced Power Management feature set (APM)     | 92        |
| 13.16       | Automatic Acoustic Management feature set (AAM) | 93        |
| 13.17       | Address Offset Feature                          | 93        |
| 13.17.1     | Enable/Disable Address Offset Mode              | 93        |
| 13.17.2     | Identify Device Data                            | 94        |
| 13.17.3     | Exceptions in Address Offset Mode               | 94        |
| <b>14.0</b> | <b>Command Protocol</b>                         | <b>95</b> |
| 14.1        | PIO Data In commands                            | 95        |

|             |   |            |
|-------------|---|------------|
| 14.2        | PIO Data Out commands   | 96         |
| 14.3        | Non-data commands   | 98         |
| 14.4        | DMA commands  | 99         |
| 14.5        | DMA queued commands   | 99         |
| <b>15.0</b> | <b>Command descriptions</b>                                   | <b>101</b> |
| 15.1        | Check Power Mode (E5h/98h)                                    | 105        |
| 15.2        | Execute Device Diagnostic (90h)                               | 106        |
| 15.3        | Flush Cache (E7h)   | 107        |
| 15.4        | Format Track (50h)  | 108        |
| 15.5        | Format Unit (F7h)   | 110        |
| 15.6        | Identify Device (ECh)   | 111        |
| 15.7        | Idle (E3h/97h)  | 118        |
| 15.8        | Idle Immediate (E1h/95h)                                      | 120        |
| 15.9        | Initialize Device Parameters (91h)                            | 121        |
| 15.10       | NOP (00h)   | 122        |
| 15.11       | Read Buffer (E4h)   | 123        |
| 15.12       | Read DMA (C8h/C9h)  | 124        |
| 15.13       | Read DMA Queued (C7h)   | 126        |
| 15.14       | Read Long (22h/23h)   | 128        |
| 15.15       | Read Multiple (C4h)   | 130        |
| 15.16       | Read Native Max Address (F8h)                                 | 132        |
| 15.17       | Read Sectors (20h/21h)  | 133        |
| 15.18       | Read Verify Sectors (40h/41h)                                 | 135        |
| 15.19       | Recalibrate (1xh)   | 137        |
| 15.20       | Security Disable Password (F6h)                               | 138        |
| 15.21       | Security Erase Prepare (F3h)                                  | 139        |
| 15.22       | Security Erase Unit (F4h)                                     | 140        |
| 15.23       | Security Freeze Lock (F5h)                                    | 142        |
| 15.24       | Security Set Password (F1h)                                   | 143        |
| 15.25       | Security Unlock (F2h)   | 145        |
| 15.26       | Seek (7xh)  | 146        |
| 15.27       | Service (A2h)   | 147        |
| 15.28       | Set Features (EFh)  | 148        |
| 15.28.1     | Set Transfer mode   | 150        |
| 15.28.2     | Write Cache   | 150        |
| 15.28.3     | Advanced Power Management                                     | 150        |
| 15.28.4     | Automatic Acoustic Management                                 | 150        |
| 15.29       | Set Max Address (F9h)   | 151        |
| 15.29.1     | Set Max Set Password (Feature = 01h)                          | 153        |
| 15.29.2     | Set Max Lock (Feature = 02h)                                  | 154        |
| 15.29.3     | Set Max Unlock (Feature = 03h)                                | 155        |
| 15.29.4     | Set Max Freeze Lock (Feature = 04h)                           | 156        |
| 15.30       | Set Multiple (C6h)  | 157        |
| 15.31       | Sleep (E6h/99h)   | 158        |
| 15.32       | S.M.A.R.T. Function Set (B0h)                                 | 159        |
| 15.32.1     | S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Values (Subcommand D0h)             | 160        |
| 15.32.2     | S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Thresholds (Subcommand D1h)         | 160        |
| 15.32.3     | S.M.A.R.T. Enable/Disable Attribute Autosave (Subcommand D2h) | 160        |
| 15.32.4     | S.M.A.R.T. Save Attribute Values (Subcommand D3h)             | 161        |
| 15.32.5     | S.M.A.R.T. Execute Off-line Immediate (Subcommand D4h)        | 161        |
| 15.32.6     | S.M.A.R.T. Read Log Sector (Subcommand D5h)                   | 162        |
| 15.32.7     | S.M.A.R.T. Write Log Sector (Subcommand D6h)                  | 162        |
| 15.32.8     | S.M.A.R.T. Enable Operations (Subcommand D8h)                 | 162        |
| 15.32.9     | S.M.A.R.T. Disable Operations (Subcommand D9h)                | 162        |



|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 15.32.10 S.M.A.R.T. Return Status (Subcommand DAh)                     | 163        |
| 15.32.11 S.M.A.R.T. Enable/Disable Automatic Off-line (Subcommand DBh) | 163        |
| 15.32.12 Device Attributes Data Structure                              | 164        |
| 15.32.13 Device Attribute Thresholds Data Structure                    | 169        |
| 15.32.14 S.M.A.R.T. error log sector                                   | 170        |
| 15.32.15 Self-test log data structure                                  | 173        |
| 15.32.16 Error reporting   | 174        |
| 15.33 Standby (E2h/96h)  | 175        |
| 15.34 Standby Immediate (E0h/94h)                                      | 177        |
| 15.35 Write Buffer (E8h)   | 178        |
| 15.36 Write DMA (CAh/CBh)  | 179        |
| 15.37 Write DMA Queued (CCh)   | 181        |
| 15.38 Write Long (32h/33h)   | 183        |
| 15.39 Write Multiple (C5h)   | 185        |
| 15.40 Write Sectors (30h/31h)  | 187        |
| <b>Appendix</b>  | <b>189</b> |
| I. Commands Support Coverage   | 189        |
| II. SET FEATURES Command Support Coverage                              | 191        |
| <b>Index</b>   | <b>193</b> |

This page intentionally left blank.

---

## List of Figures

|   |    |
|---|----|
| Figure 1. Formatted Capacity  | 9  |
| Figure 2. Mechanical positioning performance  | 9  |
| Figure 3. Command Overhead  | 10 |
| Figure 4. Mechanical Positioning Performance  | 10 |
| Figure 5. Full Stroke Seek Time   | 11 |
| Figure 6. Head Switch Time  | 11 |
| Figure 7. Cylinder Switch Time  | 11 |
| Figure 8. Single Track Seek Time  | 12 |
| Figure 9. Latency Time  | 12 |
| Figure 10. Drive ready time   | 12 |
| Figure 11. Data Transfer Speed  | 13 |
| Figure 12. Simple sequential access performance   | 13 |
| Figure 13. Random Access Performance  | 14 |
| Figure 14. Operating modes  | 15 |
| Figure 15. Mode transition times  | 15 |
| Figure 16. PList physical format  | 17 |
| Figure 17. Cylinder allocation  | 21 |
| Figure 18. PList physical format  | 23 |
| Figure 19. Connector location   | 25 |
| Figure 20. Power connector pin assignments  | 25 |
| Figure 21. Table of signal definitions  | 26 |
| Figure 22. Special signal definitions for Ultra DMA   | 26 |
| Figure 23. Interface logic signal level electrical specifications   | 29 |
| Figure 24. System reset timing  | 29 |
| Figure 25. PIO cycle time   | 30 |
| Figure 26. Multiword DMA cycle timings  | 31 |
| Figure 27. Ultra DMA cycle timings—Initiating Read  | 32 |
| Figure 28. Ultra DMA cycle timings (Host pausing Read)  | 33 |
| Figure 29. Ultra DMA cycle timings—Host terminating Read  | 34 |
| Figure 30. Ultra DMA cycle timings—Device Terminating Read  | 35 |
| Figure 31. Ultra DMA cycle timings—Initiating Write   | 36 |
| Figure 32. Ultra DMA cycle timings—Device pausing Write   | 37 |
| Figure 33. Ultra DMA cycle timings—Device terminating Write   | 38 |
| Figure 34. Ultra DMA cycle timings—Host terminating Write   | 39 |
| Figure 35. I/O address map  | 40 |
| Figure 36. Jumper pin location  | 41 |
| Figure 37. Jumper pin identifications   | 41 |
| Figure 38. Jumper pin assignment  | 42 |
| Figure 39. Jumper block setting position  | 43 |
| Figure 40. Jumper block setting position—15 head  | 44 |
| Figure 41. Jumper block setting position—2 GB/32 GB clip  | 45 |
| Figure 42. Jumper block setting position—power up in standby  | 46 |
| Figure 43. Operation, shipping, and storage temperature and humidity requirements table                     | 47 |
| Figure 44. Environmental specifications—operation, shipping, storage temperature, and humidity requirements | 47 |
| Figure 45. Input voltage requirements   | 48 |
| Figure 46. Power supply current—typical   | 48 |
| Figure 47. Power supply generated ripple at drive power connector   | 49 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Figure 48. Typical current wave form of the 12 V line at drive start up—listed by drive model capacity | 49  |
| Figure 49. Energy consumption efficiency   | 50  |
| Figure 50. Hard disk assembly—physical dimensions  | 51  |
| Figure 51. Mounting hole locations, screw thread count, screw depths, and screw torque specs           | 52  |
| Figure 52. Connector and jumper description  | 53  |
| Figure 53. Random vibration PSD profile break points—operating   | 54  |
| Figure 54. Random vibration PSD profile break points—nonoperating                                      | 55  |
| Figure 55. Sinusoidal shock wave   | 56  |
| Figure 56. Rotational Shock  | 56  |
| Figure 57. Sound power levels  | 56  |
| Figure 58. Register Set  | 67  |
| Figure 59. Alternate Status Register   | 68  |
| Figure 60. Device Control Register   | 69  |
| Figure 61. Drive Address Register  | 69  |
| Figure 62. Device/Head Register  | 70  |
| Figure 63. Error Register  | 70  |
| Figure 64. Status Register   | 72  |
| Figure 65. Reset Response table  | 75  |
| Figure 66. Default Register Values   | 76  |
| Figure 67. Diagnostic Codes  | 76  |
| Figure 68. Reset error register values   | 77  |
| Figure 69. Power conditions  | 81  |
| Figure 70. Initial Setting   | 84  |
| Figure 71. Usual Operation   | 85  |
| Figure 72. Password Lost   | 86  |
| Figure 73. Command table for device lock operation (1 of 2)  | 87  |
| Figure 73. Command table for device lock operation (2 of 2)  | 88  |
| Figure 74. Seek overlap  | 90  |
| Figure 75. Device address map before and after Set Feature   | 94  |
| Figure 76. Command set (1 of 2)  | 101 |
| Figure 76. Command set (2 of 2)  | 102 |
| Figure 77. Command set—Subcommand  | 103 |
| Figure 78. Check Power Mode Command (E5h/98h)  | 105 |
| Figure 79. Execute Device Diagnostic Command (90h)   | 106 |
| Figure 80. Flush Cache Command (E7h)   | 107 |
| Figure 81. Format Track Command (50h)  | 108 |
| Figure 82. Format Unit Command (F7h)   | 110 |
| Figure 83. Identify Device Command (ECh)   | 111 |
| Figure 84. Identify Device Information (1 of 6)  | 112 |
| Figure 84. Identify Device Information (2 of 6)  | 113 |
| Figure 84. Identify Device Information (3 of 6)  | 114 |
| Figure 84. Identify Device Information (4 of 6)  | 115 |
| Figure 84. Identify Device Information (5 of 6)  | 116 |
| Figure 84. Identify Device Information (6 of 6)  | 117 |
| Figure 85. Idle Command (E3h/97h)  | 118 |
| Figure 86. Idle Immediate Command (E1h/95h)  | 120 |
| Figure 87. Initialize Device Parameters Command (91h)  | 121 |
| Figure 88. NOP Command (00h)   | 122 |
| Figure 89. Read Buffer Command (E4h)   | 123 |
| Figure 90. Read DMA Command (C8h/C9h)  | 124 |
| Figure 91. Read DMA Queued Command (C7h)   | 126 |
| Figure 92. Read Long Command (22h/23h)   | 128 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Figure 93. Read Multiple Command (C4h)                                | 130 |
| Figure 94. Read Native Max LBA/CYL (F8h)                              | 132 |
| Figure 95. Read Sectors Command (20h/21h)                             | 133 |
| Figure 96. Read Verify Sectors Command (40h/41h)                      | 135 |
| Figure 97. Recalibrate Command (1xh)                                  | 137 |
| Figure 98. Security Disable Password command (F6h)                    | 138 |
| Figure 99. Password Information for Security Disable Password command | 138 |
| Figure 100. Security Erase Prepare Command (F3h)                      | 139 |
| Figure 101. Security Erase Unit Command (F4h)                         | 140 |
| Figure 102. Erase Unit Information                                    | 141 |
| Figure 103. Security Freeze Lock Command (F5h)                        | 142 |
| Figure 104. Security Set Password Command (F1h)                       | 143 |
| Figure 105. Security Set Password Information                         | 144 |
| Figure 106. Security Unlock Command (F2h)                             | 145 |
| Figure 107. Seek Command (7xh)  | 146 |
| Figure 108. Service Command (A2h)                                     | 147 |
| Figure 109. Set Features Command (EFh)                                | 148 |
| Figure 110. Output parameters to the device                           | 149 |
| Figure 111. Set Max Address (F9h)                                     | 151 |
| Figure 112. Set Max Set Password                                      | 153 |
| Figure 113. Set Max Set Password data contents                        | 153 |
| Figure 114. Set Max Lock  | 154 |
| Figure 115. Set Max Unlock (F9h)                                      | 155 |
| Figure 116. Set Max Freeze Lock (F9h)                                 | 156 |
| Figure 117. Set Multiple Command (C6h)                                | 157 |
| Figure 118. Sleep Command (E6h/99h)                                   | 158 |
| Figure 119. S.M.A.R.T. Function Set Command (B0h)                     | 159 |
| Figure 120. S.M.A.R.T. Function Set subcommands                       | 160 |
| Figure 121. Log sector addresses                                      | 162 |
| Figure 122. Device Attributes Data Structure                          | 164 |
| Figure 123. Individual Attribute Data Structure                       | 165 |
| Figure 124. Attribute ID Numbers                                      | 165 |
| Figure 125. Device Attribute Thresholds Data Structure                | 169 |
| Figure 126. Individual Threshold Data Structure                       | 169 |
| Figure 127. SMART error log sector                                    | 170 |
| Figure 128. Error log data structure                                  | 171 |
| Figure 129. Command data structure                                    | 171 |
| Figure 130. Error data structure                                      | 172 |
| Figure 131. Self-test log data structure                              | 173 |
| Figure 132. S.M.A.R.T. Error Codes                                    | 174 |
| Figure 133. Standby Command (E2h/96h)                                 | 175 |
| Figure 134. Standby Immediate Command (E0h/94h)                       | 177 |
| Figure 135. Write Buffer Command (E8h)                                | 178 |
| Figure 136. Write DMA Command (CAh/CBh)                               | 179 |
| Figure 137. Write DMA Queued Command (CCh)                            | 181 |
| Figure 138. Write Long Command (32h/33h)                              | 183 |
| Figure 139. Write Multiple Command (C5h)                              | 185 |
| Figure 140. Write Sectors Command (30h/31h)                           | 187 |
| Figure 141. Command coverage (1 of 2)                                 | 189 |
| Figure 141. Command coverage (2 of 2)                                 | 190 |
| Figure 142. SET FEATURES command coverage                             | 191 |

This page intentionally left blank.

---

## 1.0 General

This document describes the specifications of the following IBM 3.5-inch ATA interface hard disk drives:

- IC35L010AVER07 (10 GB)
- IC35L020AVER07 (20 GB)
- IC35L030AVER07 (30 GB)
- IC35L040AVER07 (40 GB)
- IC35L060AVER07 (60 GB)

The specifications in this document are subject to change without notice.

---

## 1.1 Glossary

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| ESD        | Electrostatic Discharge                           |
| Kbpi       | 1,000 bits per inch                               |
| Ktpi       | 1,000 tracks per inch                             |
| Mbps       | 1,000,000 bits per second                         |
| GB         | 1,000,000,000 bytes                               |
| MB         | 1,000,000 bytes                                   |
| KB         | 1,000 bytes unless otherwise specified            |
| 32 KB      | 32 x 1024 bytes                                   |
| 64 KB      | 64 x 1024 bytes                                   |
| S.M.A.R.T. | Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology |
| DFT        | Drive Fitness Test                                |
| ADM        | Automatic Drive Maintenance                       |

---

## 1.2 General caution

The drive can be damaged by shock or ESD (Electrostatic Discharge). Any damage sustained by the drive after removal from the shipping package and opening the ESD protective bag are the responsibility of the user.

---

## 1.3 References

- ATA Interface Specification [ATA/ATAPI-5 (T13/1321D Revision 2)]
- Information Technology-AT Attachment with Packet Interface-5

This page intentionally left blank.



---

## 2.0 General features

- Data capacities of 20 GB, 40 GB, and 60 GB
- Enhanced IDE (ATA-5) interface
- Sector format of 512 bytes/sector
- Closed Loop actuator servo
- A Load/Un-load mechanism with no head-to-disk contact during start/stop
- Automatic actuator lock
- Interleave factor 1:1
- Seek time of 8.5 ms in Read Operation (8.2 ms typical without Command Overhead)
- Size of sector buffer is 2048 KB  
Upper 132 KB used for firmware
- Ring buffer implementation
- Queued feature support
- Write Cache
- Advanced ECC On The Fly (EOF)
- Addition to the above, Automatic Error Recovery procedures for read and write commands
- Self Diagnostics on Power on and resident diagnostics
- PIO Data Transfer - Mode 4 (16.6 MB/sec)
- DMA Data Transfer
  - Multiword DMA : Mode 2 (16.6 MB/sec)
  - Ultra DMA : Mode 5 (100 MB/sec)
- CHS and LBA mode
- Transparent Defect Management with ADR (Automatic Defect Reallocation)
- S.M.A.R.T. (Self Monitoring and Analysis Reporting Technology)
- Power saving modes/Low RPM idle mode (APM)
- Support security feature
- Quiet Seek mode (AAM)

This page intentionally left blank.

---

## Part 1. Functional specification

This page intentionally left blank.

---

## 3.0 Fixed disk subsystem description

---

### 3.1 Control Electronics

The drive is electronically controlled by a microprocessor, several logic modules, digital/analog modules, and various drivers and receivers. The control electronics performs the following major functions:

- Controls and interprets all interface signals between the host controller and the drive
- Controls read write accessing of the disk media, including defect management and error recovery
- Controls starting, stopping, and monitoring of the spindle
- Conducts a power-up sequence and calibrates the servo
- Analyzes servo signals to provide closed loop control. These include position error signal and estimated velocity
- Monitors the actuator position and determines the target track for a seek operation
- Controls the voice coil motor driver to align the actuator in a desired position
- Constantly monitors error conditions of the servo and takes corresponding action if an error occurs
- Monitors various timers such as head settle and servo failure
- Performs self-checkout (diagnostics)

---

### 3.2 Head disk assembly

The head disk assembly (HDA) is assembled in a clean room environment and contains the disks and actuator assembly. Air is constantly circulated and filtered when the drive is operational. Venting of the HDA is accomplished using a breather filter.

The spindle is driven directly by an in-hub, brushless, sensorless DC drive motor. Dynamic braking is used to quickly stop the spindle.

---

### 3.3 Actuator

The read/write heads are mounted in the actuator. The actuator is a swing-arm assembly driven by a voice coil motor. A closed-loop positioning servo controls the movement of the actuator. An embedded servo pattern supplies feedback to the positioning servo to keep the read/write heads centered over the desired track.

The actuator assembly is balanced to allow vertical or horizontal mounting without adjustment.

When the drive is powered off, the actuator automatically moves the head to the actuator ramp outside of the disk where it is parked.

This page intentionally left blank.

## 4.0 Fixed disk characteristics

### 4.1 Formatted capacity

| Drive capacity            | 10 GB          | 20 GB          | 30 GB          | 40 GB          | 60 GB          |
|---------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| <b>Physical Layout</b>    |                |                |                |                |                |
| Label capacity (GB)       | 10             | 20.5           | 30.7           | 41             | 61.5           |
| Bytes per sector          | 512            | 512            | 512            | 512            | 512            |
| Sectors per track         | 373–780        | 373–780        | 373–780        | 373–780        | 373–780        |
| Number of data heads      | 1              | 2              | 3              | 4              | 6              |
| Number of data disks      | 1              | 1              | 2              | 2              | 3              |
| Data sectors per cylinder | 373–780        | 746–1560       | 1119–2340      | 1492–3120      | 2238–4680      |
| Data cylinders per zone   | 1100–2700      | 1100–2700      | 1100–2700      | 1100–2700      | 1100–2700      |
| <b>Logical layout (1)</b> |                |                |                |                |                |
| Number of heads           | 16             | 16             | 16             | 16             | 16             |
| Number of sectors/track   | 63             | 63             | 63             | 63             | 63             |
| Number of cylinders (2)   | 16,383         | 16,383         | 16,383         | 16,383         | 16,383         |
| Number of sectors         | 20,074,320     | 40,188,960     | 60,036,480     | 80,418,240     | 120,103,200    |
| Total logical data bytes  | 10,278,051,840 | 20,576,747,520 | 30,738,677,760 | 41,174,138,880 | 61,492,838,400 |

Figure 1. Formatted Capacity

Note (1): *Logical Layout*

*Logical layout is an imaginary HDD parameter (that is the number of Heads) which is used to access the HDD from the system interface. The Logical layout to Physical layout (that is the actual number of Head and Sectors) translation is done automatically in the HDD. The default setting can be obtained by issuing an IDENTIFY DEVICE command.*

Note (2): *Number of Cylinders*

*For drives with capacities greater than 8.45 GB the identify device information word 01 limits the number of cylinders to 16,383 per the ATA specification.*

### 4.2 Data sheet

|   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| Rotational Speed  | 7,200 (RPM)                |
| Data transfer rates (buffer to/from media)                            | 495 (Mb/s)                 |
| Data transfer rates (host to/from buffer)<br>—Interface transfer rate | 100 (MB/s)                 |
| Data buffer size <sup>1</sup>   | 2,048 (KB)                 |
| Number of Buffer segments (read)                                      | Up to 12                   |
| Number of Buffer segments (write)                                     | Up to 44                   |
| Recording Density   | Up to 44 (kBPI)            |
| Track Density   | 34 (kTPI)                  |
| Areal Density   | 14.8 (Gb/in <sup>2</sup> ) |
| Data Bands  | 18                         |

Figure 2. Mechanical positioning performance

<sup>1</sup>The Upper 132 KB is used for firmware.

---

## 4.3 Performance Characteristics

A file performance is characterized by the following parameters:

- Command Overhead
- Mechanical Positioning
  - Seek Time
  - Latency
- Data Transfer Speed
- Buffering Operation (Look ahead/Write cache)

Note: All the above parameters contribute to file performance. There are other parameters that contribute to the performance of the actual system. This specification tries to define the bare file characteristics, not the system throughput which will depend on the system and the application.

### 4.3.1 Command Overhead

Command Overhead is defined as described in the following table.

| Command Type (Files is in quiescence state)             | Time (typical) (ms) | Time (typical)@queue command (ms) |
|---|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Read (Cache not hit) (from Command issue to Seek Start) | 0.3                 | 0.3                               |
| Read (Cache hit) (from Command issue to DRQ)            | 0.1                 | 0.1                               |
| Write (from Command issue to DRQ)                       | 0.01                | 0.05                              |
| Seek (from Command issue to Seek Start)                 | 0.3                 | n/a                               |

All numerical values are average times.

---

Figure 3. Command Overhead

### 4.3.2 Mechanical positioning

#### 4.3.2.1 Average Seek Time (Without Command Overhead, Including Settling)

| Command Type            | Time (Typical) (ms) | Maximum (ms) |
|-------------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| Read                    | 8.2                 | 9.2          |
| Write)                  | 9.2                 | 10.2         |
| Read (Quiet Seek Mode)  | 19.5                | 20.5         |
| Write (Quiet Seek Mode) | 20.5                | 21.5         |

---

Figure 4. Mechanical Positioning Performance



The terms "Typical" and "Max" are used throughout this specification with the following meanings:

**Typical.** The average of the drive population tested at nominal environmental and voltage conditions.

**Maximum or Max.** The maximum value measured on any one drive over the full range of the environmental and voltage conditions. (See Sections 9.2 "Environment" on page 47 and 9.3 "DC Power Requirements" on page 48.)

The seek time is measured from the start of motion of the actuator until a reliable read or write operation may be started. Reliable read or write implies that error correction/recovery is not employed to correct for arrival problems. The Average Seek Time is measured as the weighted average of all possible seek combinations.

$$\text{Weighted Average} = \frac{\sum_{n=1}^{\text{max}} (\text{max} + 1 - n) (T_{n_{\text{in}}} + T_{n_{\text{out}}})}{(\text{max} + 1) (\text{max})}$$

Where: max = Maximum Seek Length

n = Seek Length ( 1 to max )

T<sub>n<sub>in</sub></sub> = Inward measured seek time for a n track seek

T<sub>n<sub>out</sub></sub> = Outward measured seek time for a n track seek

#### 4.3.2.2 Full Stroke Seek (Without Command Overhead, Including Settling)

| Function                | Typical (ms) | Maximum (ms) |
|-------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| Read                    | 14.7         | 17.7         |
| Write                   | 15.7         | 18.7         |
| Read (Quiet Seek Mode)  | 32.5         | 35.5         |
| Write (Quiet Seek Mode) | 33.5         | 33.5         |

Figure 5. Full Stroke Seek Time

Full stroke seek is measured as the average of 1000 full stroke seeks with a random head switch from both directions—inward and outward.

#### 4.3.2.3 Head Switch Time (Head Skew)

|                            |        |
|----------------------------|--------|
| Head Switch Time (Typical) | 1.4 ms |
|----------------------------|--------|

Figure 6. Head Switch Time

A head switch time is defined as the amount of time required by the fixed disk to complete seek the next sequential track after reading the last sector in the current track.

The measurement method is given in Section 4.3.6, "Throughput" on page 13.

#### 4.3.2.4 Cylinder Switch Time (Cylinder Skew)

|                                |        |
|--------------------------------|--------|
| Cylinder Switch Time (Typical) | 1.8 ms |
|--------------------------------|--------|

Figure 7. Cylinder Switch Time

A cylinder switch time is defined as the amount of time required by the fixed disk to complete seek the next sequential block after reading the last track in the current cylinder.

The measurement method is given in section 4.3.6, "Throughput" on page 13.

#### 4.3.2.5 Single Track Seek Time (Without Command Overhead, Including Settling)

| Function                | Typical (ms) | Maximum (ms) |
|-------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| Read                    | 0.8          | 1.5          |
| Write                   | 1.3          | 2.0          |
| Read (Quiet Seek Mode)  | 0.8          | 1.5          |
| Write (Quiet Seek Mode) | 1.3          | 2.0          |

Figure 8. Single Track Seek Time

Single track seek is measured as the average of one (1) single track seek from every track with a random head switch in both direction (inward and outward).

#### 4.3.2.6 Average latency

| Rotational speed (RPM) | Time/revolution (ms) | Average latency (ms) |
|------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 7,200                  | 8.3                  | 4.17                 |

Figure 9. Latency Time

#### 4.3.3 Drive ready time

| Power on to ready (Disks) | Typical (seconds) | Maximum (seconds) |
|---------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1                         | 7                 | 31                |
| 2                         | 9                 | 31                |
| 3                         | 11                | 31                |

Figure 10. Drive ready time

**Ready** The condition in which the drive is able to perform a media access command (for example—read, write) immediately.

**Power on** This includes the time required for the internal self diagnostics.

*Note: Max Power On to ready time is the maximum time period that Device 0 waits for Device 1 to assert PDIAG-.*

### 4.3.4 Data Transfer Speed—60 GB model

| Description                           | Mb/s |
|---------------------------------------|------|
| <b>Disk-Buffer Transfer (Zone 0)</b>  |      |
| Instantaneous (Typical)               | 48.0 |
| Sustained (read Typical)              | 40.8 |
| <b>Disk-Buffer Transfer (Zone 17)</b> |      |
| Instantaneous (Typical)               | 24.6 |
| Sustained (read Typical)              | 19.5 |
| Buffer-Host (maximum)                 | 100  |

Figure 11. Data Transfer Speed

- Instantaneous Disk-Buffer Transfer Rate (Mbyte/sec) is derived by:  
 $(\text{Number of Sectors on a track}) * 512 * (\text{Revolution/sec})$   
*Note: Number of sectors per track will vary because of the linear density recording.*
- Sustained Disk-Buffer Transfer Rate (Mbyte/sec) is defined by considering head/cylinder change time for read operation. This gives a local average data transfer rate. It is derived by:  
 $(\text{Sustained Transfer Rate}) = A / (B + C + D)$   
 $A = (\text{Number of Data Sectors per Cylinder}) * 512$   
 $B = (\# \text{ of Surface per cylinder} - 1) * (\text{Head Switch Time})$   
 $C = (\text{Cylinder Change Time})$   
 $D = (\# \text{ of Surface}) * (\text{One Revolution Time})$
- Instantaneous Buffer-Host Transfer Rate (Mbyte/sec) defines the maximum data transfer rate on AT Bus. It also depends on the speed of the host.

The measurement method is given in section 4.3.6 "Throughput" on page 13.

### 4.3.5 Buffering Operation (Look ahead/Write cache)

To improve the total performance, the file utilizes a ring buffer for look ahead and write cache. The total of 1916 KB of the buffer is divided into multiple segmented blocks for write buffer or read buffer use.

### 4.3.6 Throughput

#### 4.3.6.1 Simple sequential access

The following figure illustrates the case of 3-disk Disk Enclosure.

| Operation                 | Typical (second) | Maximum (second) |
|---------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| Sequential Read (Zone 0)  | 0.44             | 0.47             |
| Sequential Read (Zone 17) | 0.92             | 0.96             |

Figure 12. Simple sequential access performance

The above table gives the time required to read/write for a total of 8000h consecutive blocks (16,777,216 bytes) accessed by 128 read commands. The Typical and Maximum values are given by 105% and 110% of T respectively throughout following performance description.

*Note: It is assumed that a host system responds instantaneously and that the host data transfer is faster than the sustained data rate.*

$$T = A + B + C + (16,777,216/D) + (512/E) \quad (\text{READ})$$

where

- T = Calculated time (in seconds)
- A = Command process time (Command Overhead) (in seconds)
- B = Average seek time (in seconds)
- C = Average latency (in seconds)
- D = Sustained disk-buffer transfer rate (bytes/s)
- E = Buffer-host transfer rate (bytes/s)

#### 4.3.6.2 Random access

The following figure illustrates the case of 3-disk Disk Enclosure.

---

| Operation   | Typical (s) | Maximum (s) |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| Random Read | 55          | 60          |

---

Figure 13. Random Access Performance

The above table gives the time required to execute a total of 1000h read/write commands which access a random LBA.

$$T = (A + B + C + 512/D + 512/E) * 4096 \quad (\text{READ}) \quad \text{where}$$

- T = Calculated time (in seconds)
- A = Command process time (Command Overhead) (in seconds)
- B = Average seek time (in seconds)
- C = Latency
- D = Average sustained disk-buffer transfer rate (bytes/sec)
- E = Buffer-host transfer rate (bytes/sec)

### 4.3.7 Operating modes

| Operating mode | Description  |
|----------------|--|
| Spin-up        | Start up time period from spindle stop or power down   |
| Seek           | Seek operation mode  |
| Write          | Write operation mode   |
| Read           | Read operation mode  |
| Low RPM Idle   | Spindle rotation @4,500 RPM with heads unloaded  |
| Unload Idle    | Spindle rotation @7,200 RPM with heads unloaded  |
| Idle           | The spindle motor and servo system are working normally. Commands can be received and processed immediately.           |
| Standby        | The actuator is unloaded and spindle motor is stopped. Commands can be received immediately.                           |
| Sleep          | The actuator is unloaded and spindle motor is stopped. Only a soft reset or hard reset can change the mode to standby. |

Figure 14. Operating modes

*Note: Upon power down or spindle stop a head locking mechanism will secure the heads in the OD parking position.*

### 4.3.8 Mode transition times

Mode transition times are shown below.

| From         | To      | RPM                                      | Transition time (typical) (seconds) |
|--------------|---------|--|-------------------------------------|
| Standby      | Idle    | 0–7200<br>(3 disks) 11 seconds (typical) | 31 (max.)                           |
| Idle         | Standby | 7200–0                                   | Immediately                         |
| Standby      | Sleep   | 0  | Immediately                         |
| Sleep        | Standby | 0  | Immediately                         |
| Unload Idle  | Idle    | 7,200                                    | 1.1 (typical)                       |
| Low RPM Idle | Idle    | 4500–7200                                | 4.8 seconds<br>(3 Disks, typical)   |

*Note: The actual spin down time will exist, however the command will be processed immediately.*

Figure 15. Mode transition times

This page intentionally left blank.

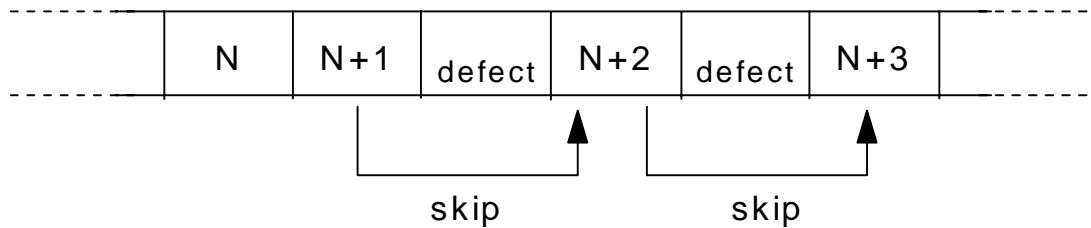
---

## 5.0 Defect flagging strategy

Media defects are remapped to the next available sector during the Format Process in manufacturing. The mapping from LBA to the physical locations is calculated by an internally maintained table.

### Shipped format

- Data areas are optimally used.
- No extra sector is wasted as a spare throughout user data areas.
- All pushes generated by defects are absorbed by spare tracks of inner zone.



---

Figure 16. PList physical format

Defects are skipped without any constraint, such as track or cylinder boundary. The calculation from LBA to physical is done automatically by internal table.

*Note: It is possible to reallocate sectors during drive usage including sectors damaged during the early period of usage. Reallocation of sectors is primarily caused by handling problems and is a normal maintenance function performed by the hard disk drive.*

This page intentionally left blank.



---

## 6.0 Data integrity

---

### 6.1 Data loss at Power off

- The drive retains recorded information under all non-write operations.
- No more than one sector can be lost by power down during write operation while write cache is disabled.
- Power off during write operations may make an incomplete sector which will report hard data error when read. The sector can be recovered by a rewrite operation.
- Hard reset does not cause any data loss.
- If the write cache option is active, the data in the write cache will be lost. To prevent the loss of customer data, it is recommended that the last write access before power off be issued after setting write cache to off.

---

### 6.2 Write cache

- Power off while write cache is enabled may cause the loss of data remaining in the cache that has not been flushed onto the disk media. Therefore, it is possible for data to be lost due to a power off after write command completion.
- There are two ways to check if all data in the write cache has been flushed onto the disk. Checking just before power off is recommended to prevent data loss.
  - Confirm successful completion of Software Reset
  - Confirm successful completion of Flush Cache command

---

### 6.3 Equipment status

Equipment status is available to the host system any time the drive is not ready to read, write, or seek. This status normally exists at power-on time and will be maintained until the following conditions are satisfied:

- Access recalibration/tuning is complete
- Spindle speed meets requirements for reliable operation
- Self-check of drive is complete

Appropriate error status is made available to the host system if any of the following conditions occur after the drive has become ready:

- Spindle speed outside requirements for reliable operation
- Occurrence of a WRITE FAULT condition

This page intentionally left blank.

## 7.0 File Organization

### 7.1 File format

When the drive is shipped from IBM manufacturing it satisfies the sector continuity in the physical format by defect flagging strategy described in the following section in order to provide the maximum performance to us.

### 7.2 Cylinder allocation

|                | Physical cylinders |       | Blocks/Track |
|----------------|--------------------|-------|--------------|
| Data Zone 0    | 0                  | 2699  | 780          |
| Data Zone 1    | 2700               | 4699  | 760          |
| Data Zone 2    | 4700               | 6599  | 744          |
| Data Zone 3    | 6600               | 9399  | 720          |
| Data Zone 4    | 9400               | 11499 | 685          |
| Data Zone 5    | 11500              | 13999 | 660          |
| Data Zone 6    | 14000              | 15699 | 640          |
| Data Zone 7    | 15700              | 16999 | 624          |
| Data Zone 8    | 17000              | 19599 | 600          |
| Data Zone 9    | 19600              | 20799 | 576          |
| Data Zone 10   | 20800              | 23199 | 540          |
| Data Zone 11   | 23200              | 24799 | 520          |
| Data Zone 12   | 24800              | 26299 | 493          |
| Data Zone 13   | 26300              | 27799 | 480          |
| Data Zone 14   | 27800              | 29299 | 440          |
| Data Zone 15   | 29300              | 30399 | 420          |
| Data Zone 16   | 30400              | 31999 | 400          |
| Data Zone 17   | 32000              | 33334 | 373          |
| Spare Cylinder | 33335              | 33734 | 373          |

Figure 17. Cylinder allocation

This page intentionally left blank.

---

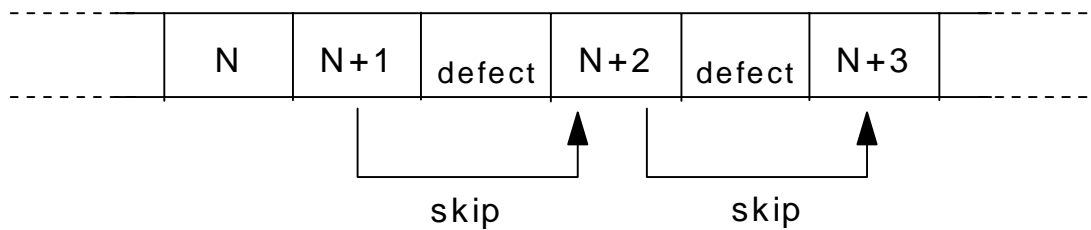
## 8.0 Defect flagging strategy

Media defects are remapped to the next available sector during the Format Process in manufacturing. The mapping from LBA to the physical locations is calculated by an internally maintained table.

---

### 8.1 Shipped format

- Data areas are optimally used.
  - No extra sector is wasted as a spare throughout user data areas.
  - All pushes generated by defects are absorbed by spare tracks of inner zone.
- 



---

Figure 18. PList physical format

Defects are skipped without any constraint, such as track or cylinder boundary. The calculation from LBA to physical is done automatically by internal table.

This page intentionally left blank.

---

## 9.0 Specification

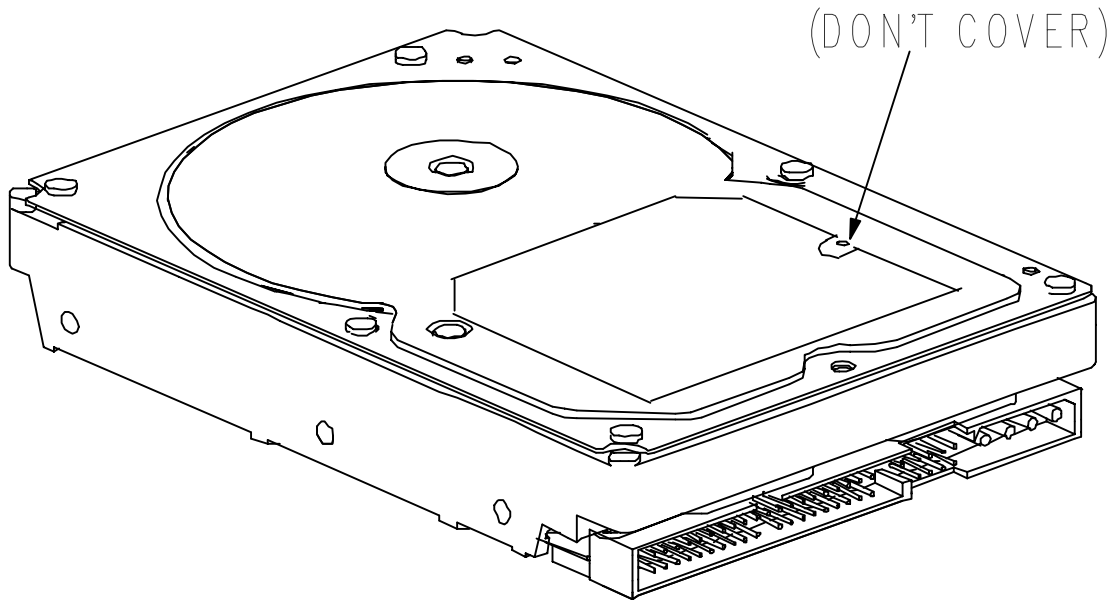
---

### 9.1 Electrical interface

#### 9.1.1 Connector location

Refer to the following illustration to see the location of the connectors.

---



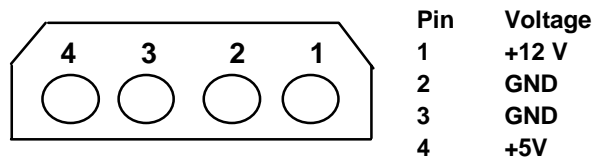
---

Figure 19. Connector location

##### 9.1.1.1 DC power connector

The DC power connector is designed to mate with AMP (P/N 1-480424-0) using AMP pins (P/N 350078-4) (strip) or (P/N 61173-4) (loose piece) or their equivalents. Pin assignments are shown in the following figure.

---



---

Figure 20. Power connector pin assignments

##### 9.1.1.2 AT signal connector

The AT signal connector is a 40-pin connector.

## 9.1.2 Signal definition

The pin assignments of interface signals are listed in the figure below:

| PIN | SIGNAL    | I/O | Type    | PIN  | SIGNAL       | I/O | Type    |
|-----|-----------|-----|---------|------|--------------|-----|---------|
| 01  | RESET-    | I   | TTL     | 02   | GND          | -   | -       |
| 03  | DD7       | I/O | 3-state | 04   | DD8          | I/O | 3-state |
| 05  | DD6       | I/O | 3-state | 06   | DD9          | I/O | 3-state |
| 07  | DD5       | I/O | 3-state | 08   | DD10         | I/O | 3-state |
| 09  | DD4       | I/O | 3-state | 10   | DD11         | I/O | 3-state |
| 11  | DD3       | I/O | 3-state | 12   | DD12         | I/O | 3-state |
| 13  | DD2       | I/O | 3-state | 14   | DD13         | I/O | 3-state |
| 15  | DD1       | I/O | 3-state | 16   | DD14         | I/O | 3-state |
| 17  | DD0       | I/O | 3-state | 18   | DD15         | I/O | 3-state |
| 19  | GND       | -   | -       | (20) | key          | -   | -       |
| 21  | DMARQ     | O   | 3-state | 22   | GND          | -   | -       |
| 23  | DIOW-(* ) | I   | TTL     | 24   | GND          | -   | -       |
| 25  | DIOR-(* ) | I   | TTL     | 26   | GND          | -   | -       |
| 27  | IORDY(* ) | O   | 3-state | 28   | CSEL         | I   | TTL     |
| 29  | DMACK-    | I   | TTL     | 30   | GND          | -   | -       |
| 31  | INTRQ     | O   | 3-state | 32   | IOCS16- (**) | O   | OC      |
| 33  | DA1       | I   | TTL     | 34   | PDIAG-       | I/O | OC      |
| 35  | DA0       | I   | TTL     | 36   | DA2          | I   | TTL     |
| 37  | CSO-      | I   | TTL     | 38   | CS1-         | I   | TTL     |
| 39  | DASP-     | I/O | OC      | 40   | GND          | -   | -       |

Notes:

1. "O" designates an output from the drive.
2. "I" designates an input to the drive.
3. "I/O" designates an input/output common.
4. "OC" designates open-collector or open-drain output.
5. The signal lines marked with (\*) are redefined during the Ultra DMA protocol to provide special functions. These lines change from the conventional to special definitions at the moment the Host decides to allow a DMA burst if the Ultra DMA transfer mode was previously chosen via SetFeatures. The Drive becomes aware of this change upon assertion of the DMACK- line. These lines revert back to their original definitions upon the deassertion of DMACK- at the termination of the DMA burst.
6. (\*\*) complies with ATA-2.

Figure 21. Table of signal definitions

|                        | Special Definition<br>(for Ultra DMA) | Conventional Definition |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>Write Operation</b> | DDMARDY-<br>HSTROBE<br>STOP           | IORDY<br>DIOR-<br>DIOW- |
| <b>Read Operation</b>  | HDMARDY-<br>DSTROBE<br>STOP           | DIOR-<br>IORDY<br>DIOW- |

Figure 22. Special signal definitions for Ultra DMA



- DD00–DD15** DD00–DD15 are the 16-bit bi-directional data bus signal names. These lines connect the host and the drive. The lower 8 lines (DD00–07) are used for Register and ECC access. All 16 lines (DD00–DD15) are used for data transfer. Each line is a 3-state lines with 24 mA current sink capability.
- DA0-DA2** These addresses are used to select the individual register in the drive.
- CS0-** CS0- is the Chip Select signal generated from the Host address bus. When active, one of the Command Block Registers [Data, Error (Features when written), Sector Count, Sector Number, Cylinder Low, Cylinder High, Drive/Head and Status (Command when written) register] can be selected. (See Figure 39 on page 43.)
- CS1-** CS1- is the chip select signal generated from the Host address bus. When active, one of the Control Block Registers [Alternate Status (Device Control when written) and Drive Address register] can be selected. (See Figure 39 on page 43.)
- RESET-** This signal is used to reset the drive. The drive requires that this line be kept at a logic Low state during power up and in a High state thereafter.
- DIOW-** This signals rising edge holds data from the host data bus to a register or data register of the HDD.
- DIOR-** When the DIOR- signal is low data is enabled from either a register or data register of the drive onto the data bus. The data on the bus is latched on the rising edge of the DIOR- signal.
- INTRQ** The interrupt request is enabled only when the drive is selected and the host activates the nIEN bit in the Device Control Register. Otherwise, this signal is in a high impedance state regardless of the state of the IRQ bit. The interrupt is set when the IRQ bit is set by the drive CPU. The IRQ is reset to zero by a host read of the status register or a write to the Command Register. This signal is a 3-state line with 24 mA sink capability.
- IOCS16-** This signal gives an indication to the host that a 16-bit wide data register has been addressed and that the drive is prepared to send or receive a 16-bit wide data word. This signal is an Open-drain output with 24 mA sink capability and an external resistor is needed to pull this line up to 5 Volts.
- DASP-** This is a time-multiplexed signal which indicates that either a drive is active or that Device 1 is present. This signal is driven by Open-Drain driver and internally pulled up to 5 Volts through a 10 K $\Omega$  resistor.
- During the Power-on initialization or after a RESET- is negated, DASP- is asserted by Device 1 within 400 ms to indicate that Device 1 is present. Device 0 allows up to 450 ms for Device 1 to assert the DASP- signal. If Device 1 is not present, Device 0 may assert DASP- to drive an LED indicator.
- DASP- is negated following acceptance of the first valid command by Device 1. Anytime after negation of DASP- either drive (that is master or slave) may assert DASP- to indicate that a drive is active.
- PDIAG-** The PDIAG- signal is asserted by Device 1 to indicate to Device 0 that it has completed diagnostics. This line is pulled-up to +5 Volts in the drive through a 10 K $\Omega$  resistor.
- Following a Power On Reset, software reset, or RESET-, drive 1 negates PDIAG- within 1 ms (to indicate to Device 0 that it is busy). Drive 1 shall then assert PDIAG- within 30 seconds to indicate that it is no longer busy and is able to provide status.
- Following the receipt of a valid Execute Drive Diagnostics command, Device 1 negates PDIAG- within 1 ms to indicate to Device 0 that it is busy and has not yet passed its drive diagnostics. If Device 1 is present then Device 0 waits up to 6 seconds from the receipt

of a valid Execute Drive Diagnostics command for drive 1 to assert PDIAG-. Device 1 clears BSY before asserting PDIAG- and PDIAG- is used to indicate that Device 1 has passed its diagnostics and is ready to post status.

If DASP- was not asserted by Device 1 during reset initialization, Device 0 shall post its own status immediately after it completes diagnostics and clear the Device 1 Status register to 00h. Device 0 may be unable to accept commands until it has finished its reset procedure and is ready (DRDY=1).

Device 1 releases PDIAG-/CBLID- no later than after the first command following a power on or hardware reset sequence so that the host may sample PDIAG-/CBLID- in order to detect the presence or absence of an 80-conductor cable assembly.

#### **CSEL (Cable Select) (Optional)**

The drive is configured as either Device 0 or 1 depending upon the value of CSEL.

- If CSEL is grounded the device address is 0.
- If CSEL is open the device address is 1.

**KEY** Pin position 20 has no connection pin. It is recommended to close the respective position of the cable connector in order to avoid incorrect insertion by mistake.

**IORDY** This signal is negated to extend the host transfer cycle when a drive is not ready to respond to a data transfer request, and may be negated when the host transfer cycle is less than 240 ns for PIO data transfer. This signal is an open-drain output with 24 mA sink capability and an external resistor is needed to pull this line to +5 Volts.

**DMACK-** This signal is used by the host in response to DMARQ to either acknowledge that data has been accepted or that data is available.

This signal is internally pulled up to +5 Volts through a 15 K $\Omega$  resistor and the tolerance of the resistor value is -50% to +100%.

**DMARQ** This signal—used for DMA data transfers between host and drive—is asserted by the drive when it is ready to transfer data to or from the host. The direction of data transfer is controlled by DIOR- and DIOW-. This signal is used to handshake with the DMACK- signal. This signal is a 3-state line with 24 mA sink capability and internally pulled down to GND through a 10 K $\Omega$  resistor.

#### **HDMARDY- (Ultra DMA)**

This signal is used only for Ultra DMA data transfers between the host and the device.

HDMARDY- is a flow control signal for Ultra DMA data in bursts. This signal is held asserted by the host to indicate to the device that the host is ready to receive Ultra DMA data in transfers. The host may negate HDMARDY- to pause an Ultra DMA data in transfer.

#### **HSTROBE (Ultra DMA)**

This signal is used only for Ultra DMA data transfers between the host and the device.

HSTROBE is the data out strobe signal from the host for an Ultra DMA data out transfer. Both the rising and falling edge of HSTROBE latch the data from DD00–DD15 into the device. The host may stop toggling HSTROBE to pause an Ultra DMA data out transfer.

#### **STOP (Ultra DMA)**

This signal is used only for Ultra DMA data transfers between the host and the device.

The STOP signal is asserted by the host prior to initiation of an Ultra DMA burst. The STOP signal is negated by the host before data is transferred in an Ultra DMA burst. Assertion of STOP by the host during or after data transfer in an Ultra DMA mode signals the termination of the burst.

### DDMARDY- (Ultra DMA)

This signal is used only for Ultra DMA data transfers between the host and the drive.

DDMARDY- is a flow control signal for Ultra DMA data out bursts. This signal is held asserted by the device to indicate to the host that the device is ready to receive Ultra DMA data out transfers. The device may negate DDMARDY- to pause an Ultra DMA data out transfer.

### DSTROBE (Ultra DMA)

This signal is used only for Ultra DMA data transfers between the host and the drive.

DSTROBE is the data in strobe signal from the device for an Ultra DMA data in transfer. Both the rising and falling edge of DSTROBE latch the data from DD00–DD15 into the host. The device may stop toggling DSTROBE to pause an Ultra DMA data in transfer.

*Note: The termination resistors at the device side are implemented as follows:*

Device Termination (implemented on the drive side)

- 33  $\Omega$  for DD00–DD15, IORDY
- 82  $\Omega$  for CS0-, CS1-, DA0, DA1, DA2, DIOR-, DIOW-, DMACK-
- 22  $\Omega$  for DMARQ and INTRQ

## 9.1.3 Interface logic signal levels

The interface logic signal has the following electrical specifications:

|         | Logic level designations | Voltage    |
|---------|--------------------------|------------|
| Inputs  | Input High Voltage       | 2.0 (Min.) |
|         | Input Low Voltage        | 0.8 (Max.) |
| Outputs | Output High Voltage      | 2.4 (Min.) |
|         | Output Low Voltage       | 0.5 (Max.) |

Figure 23. Interface logic signal level electrical specifications

## 9.1.4 Reset timings

Drive reset timing.

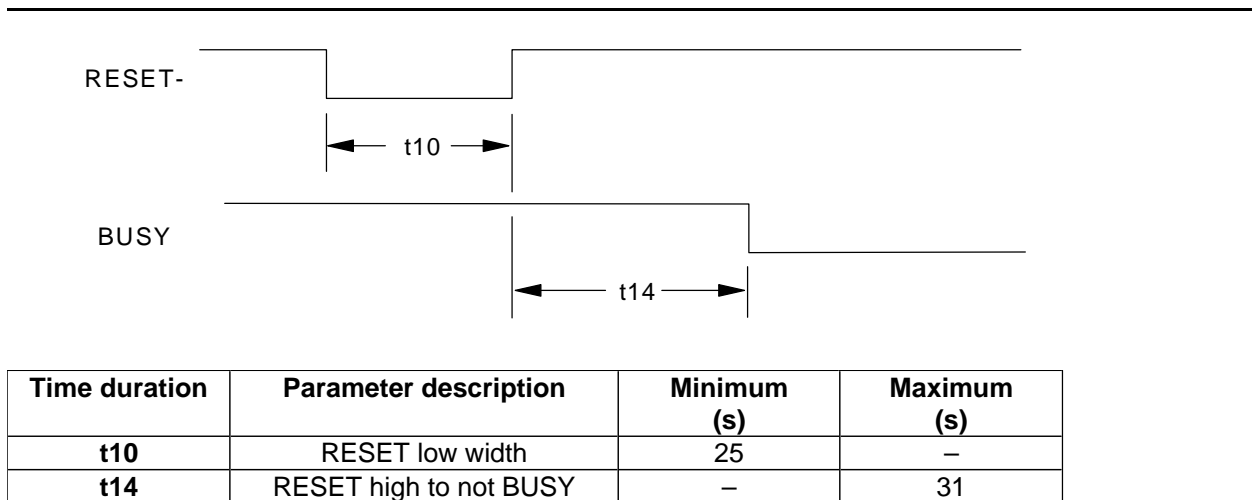
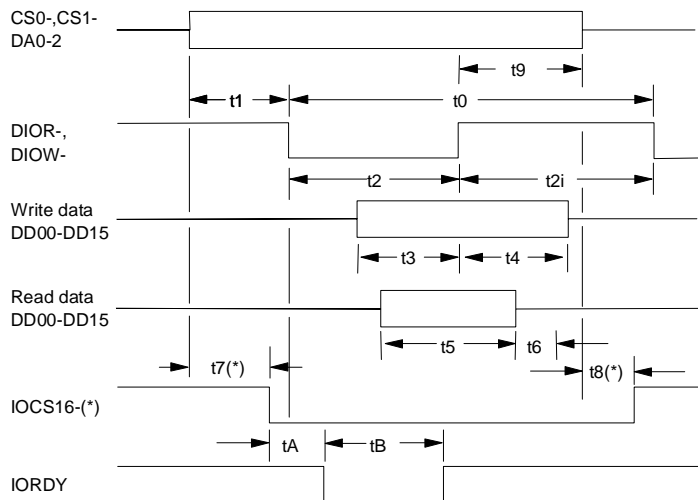


Figure 24. System reset timing

## 9.1.5 PIO timings

The PIO cycle timings meet Mode 4 of the ATA/ATAPI-5 description.



|       | Parameter descriptions                         | Minimum (ns) | Maximum (ns) |
|-------|--|--------------|--------------|
| t0    | Cycle time                                     | 120          | –            |
| t1    | CS0- CS1-, DA00–02 valid to DIOR-, DIOW- setup | 25           | –            |
| t2    | DIOR-, DIOW- pulse width                       | 70           | –            |
| t2i   | DIOR-, DIOW- recovery time                     | 25           | –            |
| t3    | DIOW- data setup                               | 20           | –            |
| t4    | DIOW- data hold                                | 10           | –            |
| t5    | DIOR- data setup                               | 20           | –            |
| t6    | DIOR- data hold                                | 5            | –            |
| t7(*) | CS0-, CS1-, DA0–02 valid to IOCS16- assertion  | –            | 40           |
| t8(*) | CS0-, CS1-, DA0–02 invalid to IOCS16- negation | –            | 30           |
| t9    | DIOR-, DIOW- to CS0-, CS1-, DA0-2 valid hold   | 10           | -            |
| tA    | IORDY setup time                               | –            | 35           |
| tB    | IORDY pulse width                              | –            | 1250         |

(\*) Up to ATA-2 (modes—0, 1, and 2)

Figure 25. PIO cycle time

### 9.1.5.1 Write DRQ interval time

For write sectors and write multiple operations, 3.8 us is inserted from the end of negation of the DRQ bit until the setting of the next DRQ bit.

### 9.1.5.2 Read DRQ interval time

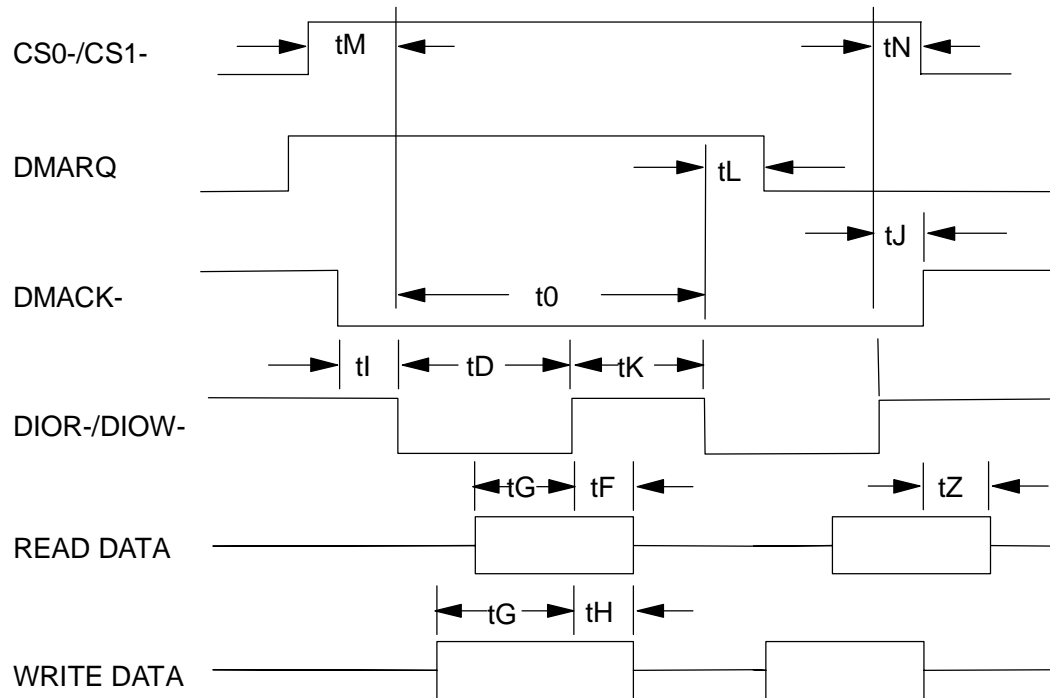
For read sectors and read multiple operations the interval from the end of negation of the DRQ bit until the setting of the next DRQ bit is as follows:

- If a host reads the status register only before the sector or block transfer, the DRQ interval is 4.2 us.

If a host reads the status register after or both before and after the sector or block transfer, the DRQ interval is 11.5 us.

## 9.1.6 Multiword DMA timings

The Multiword DMA timing meets Mode 2 of the ATA/ATAPI-5 description.



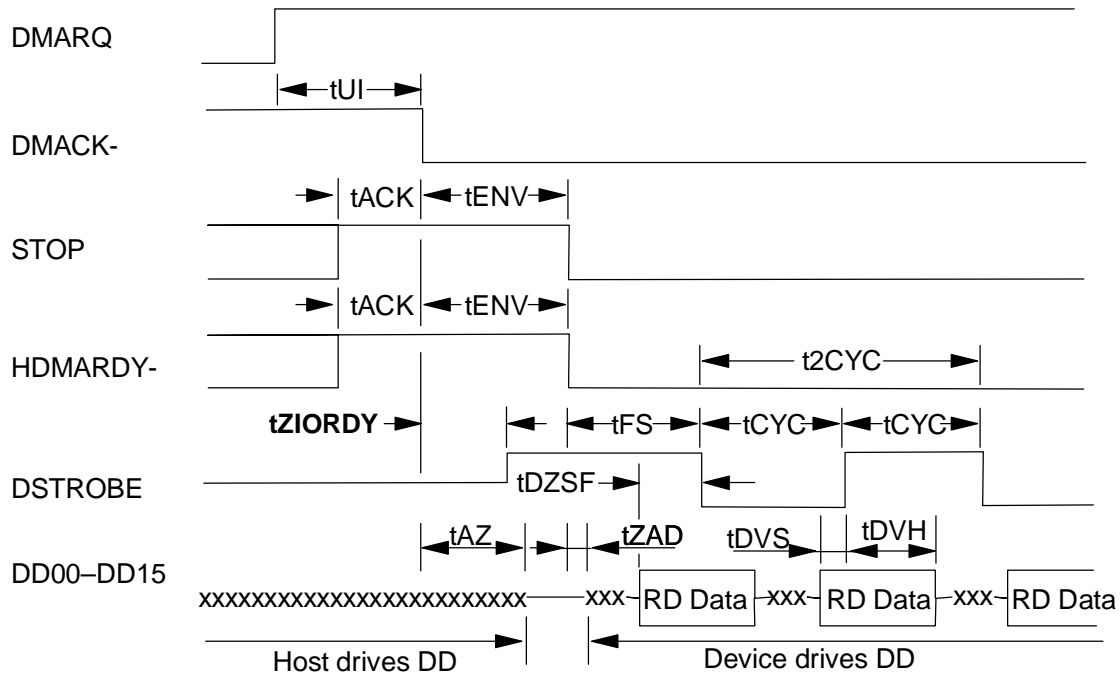
|    | Parameter descriptions            | MIN. (ns) | MAX. (ns) |
|----|-----------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| t0 | Cycle time                        | 120       | –         |
| tD | DIOR-, DIOW- asserted pulse width | 70        | –         |
| tE | DIOR- data access                 | 50        | –         |
| tF | DIOR- data hold                   | 5         | –         |
| tG | DIOR-/DIOW- data setup            | 20        | –         |
| tH | DIOW- data hold                   | 10        | –         |
| tI | DMACK- to -DIOR/-DIOW setup       | 0         | –         |
| tJ | DIOR-/DIOW- to DMACK- hold        | 5         | –         |
| tK | DIOR-/DIOW- negated pulse width   | 25        | –         |
| tL | DIOR-/DIOW- to DMARQ- delay       | –         | 35        |
| tM | CS (1:0) valid to DIOR-/DIOW-     | 25        | –         |
| tN | CS (1:0) hold                     | 10        | –         |
| tZ | DMACK- to read data released      | –         | 25        |

Figure 26. Multiword DMA cycle timings

## 9.1.7 Ultra DMA timings

The Ultra DMA timing meets Modes 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 of the Ultra DMA Protocol.

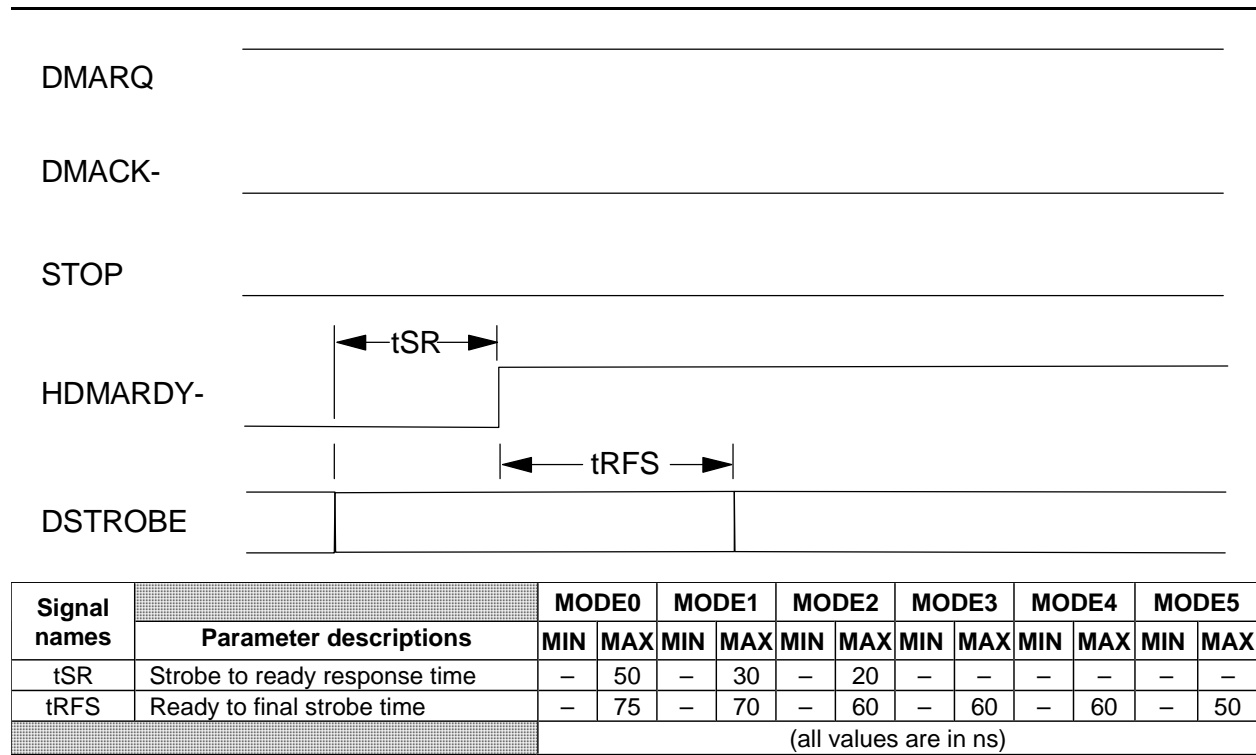
### 9.1.7.1 Initiating Read DMA



| Signal names           | Parameter descriptions                           | MODE0 |     | MODE1 |     | MODE2 |     | MODE3 |     | MODE4 |     | MODE5 |     |
|------------------------|--|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|
|                        |  | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX |
| $t_{UI}$               | Unlimited interlock time                         | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   |
| $t_{ACK}$              | Setup time before -DMACK                         | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   |
| $t_{ENV}$              | Envelope time                                    | 20    | 70  | 20    | 70  | 20    | 70  | 20    | 55  | 20    | 55  | 20    | 50  |
| $t_{ZIORDY}$           | Wait time before driving DSTROBE                 | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   |
| $t_{FS}$               | First strobe time                                | 0     | 230 | 0     | 200 | 0     | 170 | 0     | 130 | 0     | 120 | 0     | 90  |
| $t_{CYC}$              | Cycle time                                       | 112   | -   | 73    | -   | 54    | -   | 39    | -   | 25    | -   | 17    | -   |
| $t_{2CYC}$             | 2 cycle time                                     | 230   | -   | 153   | -   | 115   | -   | 86    | -   | 57    | -   | 38    | -   |
| $t_{AZ}$               | Output release time                              | -     | 10  | -     | 10  | -     | 10  | -     | 10  | -     | 10  | -     | 10  |
| $t_{ZAD}$              | Output enable time                               | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   |
| $t_{DVS}$              | Data setup time (at device side)                 | 70    | -   | 48    | -   | 31    | -   | 20    | -   | 7     | -   | 5     | -   |
| $t_{DVH}$              | Data hold time (at device side)                  | 6     | -   | 6     | -   | 6     | -   | 6     | -   | 6     | -   | 5     | -   |
| $t_{DZFS}$             | Time from data output until the first transition | 70    | -   | 48    | -   | 31    | -   | 20    | -   | 7     | -   | 25    | -   |
| (all values are in ns) |  |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |

Figure 27. Ultra DMA cycle timings—Initiating Read

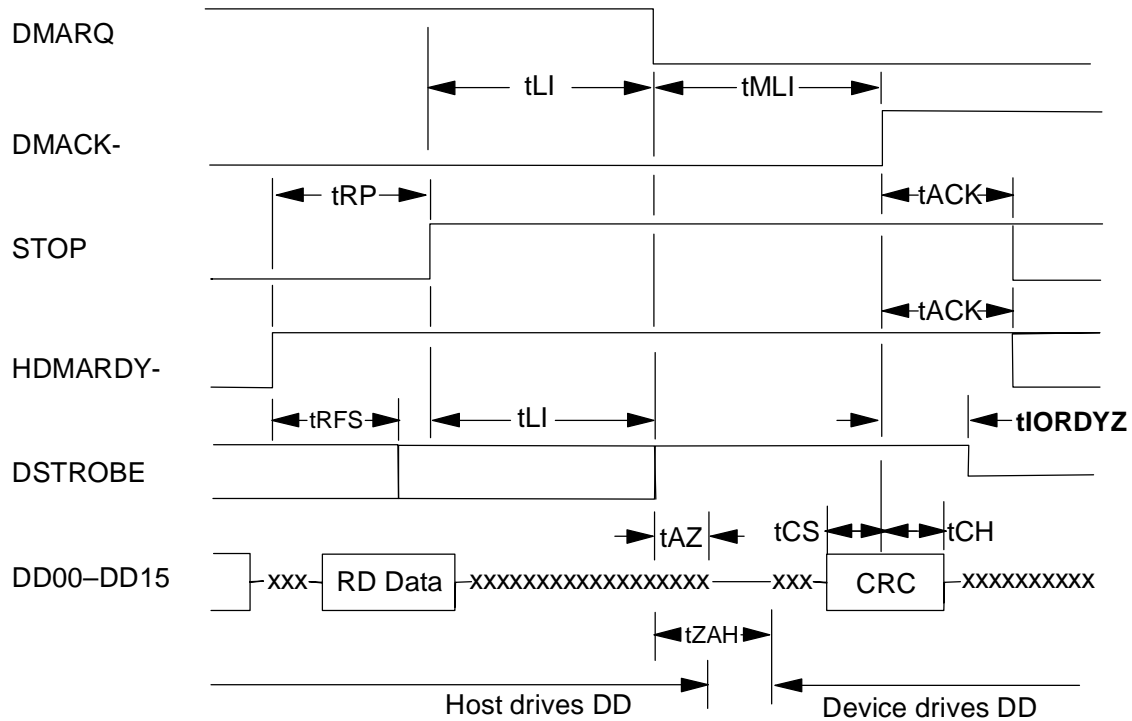
### 9.1.7.2 Host Pausing Read DMA



*Note: When a host does not meet tSR, it should be ready to receive 2 (mode 0, 1 and 2) or 3 (mode 3, 4, and 5) more strobes after HDMARDY- is negated.*

Figure 28. Ultra DMA cycle timings (Host pausing Read)

### 9.1.7.3 Host Terminating Read DMA

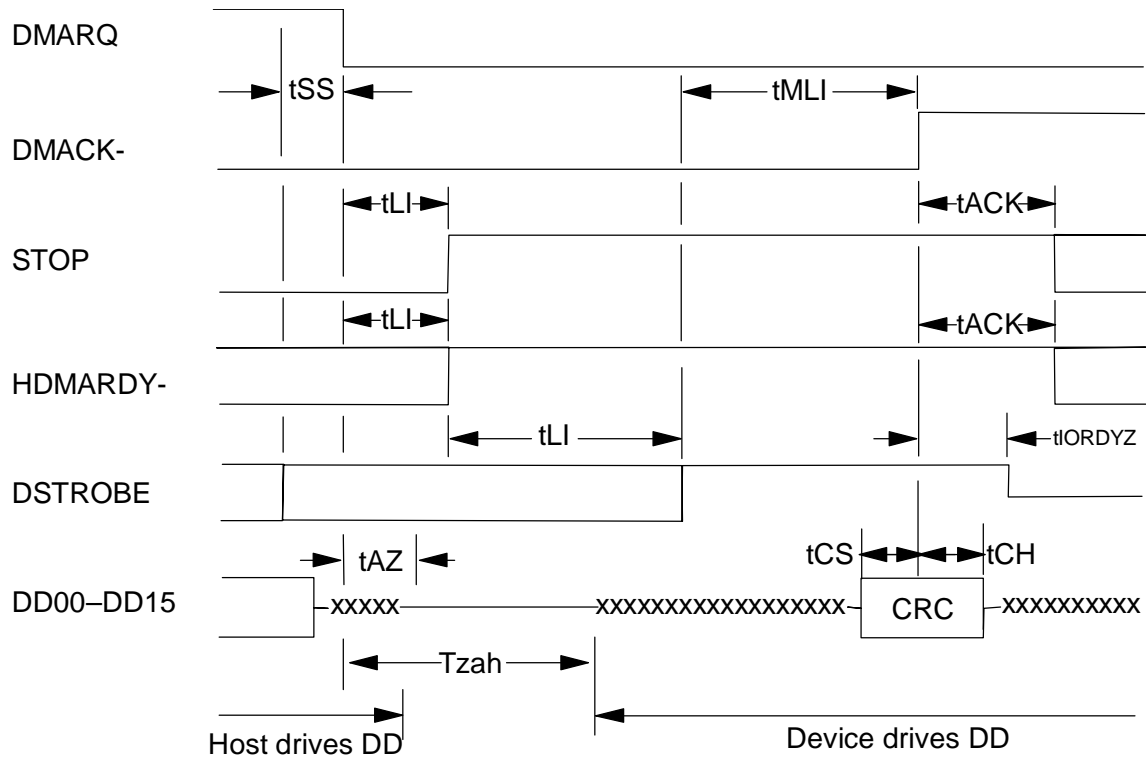


| Signal names           | Parameter descriptions               | MODE0 |     | MODE1 |     | MODE2 |     | MODE3 |     | MODE4 |     | MODE5 |     |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|
|                        |                                      | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX |
| $t_{RFS}$              | Ready to final strobe time           | –     | 75  | –     | 70  | –     | 60  | –     | 60  | –     | 60  | –     | 50  |
| $t_{RP}$               | Ready to pause time                  | 160   | –   | 125   | –   | 100   | –   | 100   | –   | 100   | –   | 85    | –   |
| $t_{LI}$               | Limited interlock time               | 0     | 150 | 0     | 150 | 0     | 150 | 0     | 100 | 0     | 100 | 0     | 75  |
| $t_{AZ}$               | Output release time                  | –     | 10  | –     | 10  | –     | 10  | –     | 10  | –     | 10  | –     | 10  |
| $t_{ZAH}$              | Output enable time                   | 20    | –   | 20    | –   | 20    | –   | 20    | –   | 20    | –   | 20    | –   |
| $t_{MLI}$              | Interlocking time                    | 20    | –   | 20    | –   | 20    | –   | 20    | –   | 20    | –   | 20    | –   |
| $t_{CS}$               | CRC word setup time (at device side) | 15    | –   | 10    | –   | 7     | –   | 7     | –   | 5     | –   | 5     | –   |
| $t_{CH}$               | CRC word Hold time (at device side)  | 5     | –   | 5     | –   | 5     | –   | 5     | –   | 5     | –   | 5     | –   |
| $t_{ACK}$              | Hold time after -DMACK negation      | 20    | –   | 20    | –   | 20    | –   | 20    | –   | 20    | –   | 20    | –   |
| $t_{IORDYZ}$           | Pull-up time before DSTROBE release  | –     | 20  | –     | 20  | –     | 20  | –     | 20  | –     | 20  | –     | 20  |
| (all values are in ns) |                                      |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |

Figure 29. Ultra DMA cycle timings—Host terminating Read



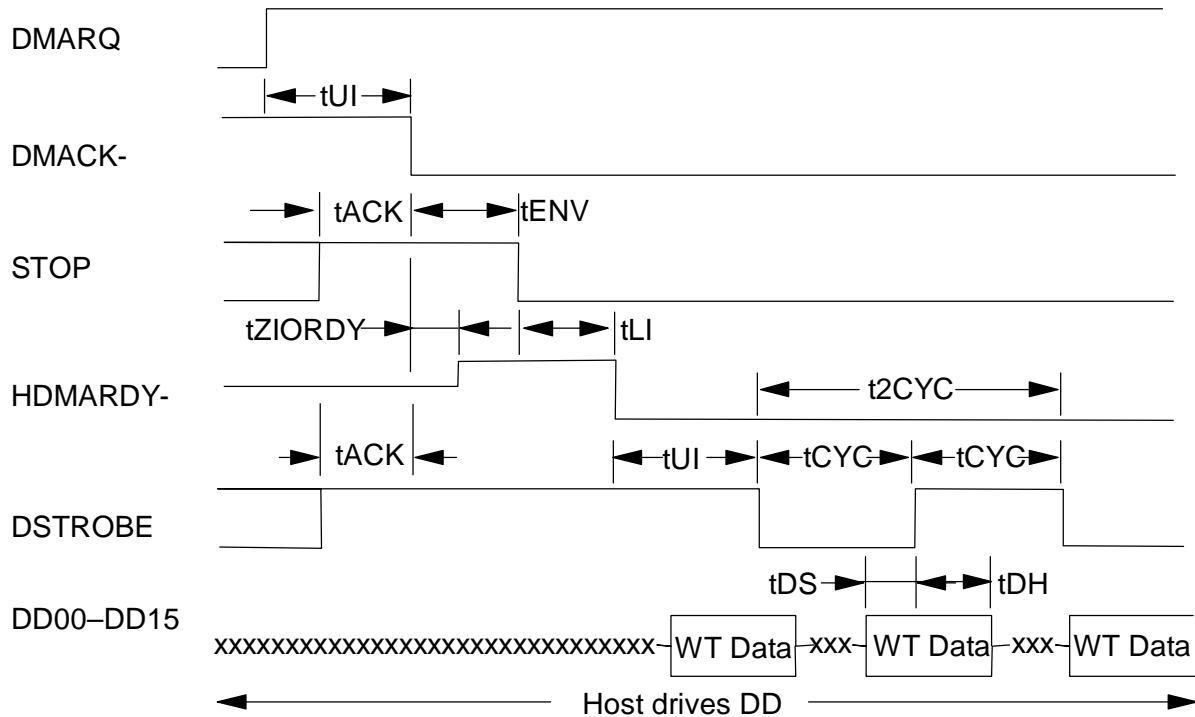
### 9.1.7.4 Device Terminating Read DMA



| Signal names           | Parameter descriptions               | MODE0 |     | MODE1 |     | MODE2 |     | MODE3 |     | MODE4 |     | MODE5 |     |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|
|                        |                                      | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX |
| tSS                    | Time from strobe to stop assertion   | 50    | -   | 50    | -   | 50    | -   | 50    | -   | 50    | -   | 50    | -   |
| tLI                    | Limited interlock time               | 0     | 150 | 0     | 150 | 0     | 150 | 0     | 100 | 0     | 100 | 0     | 75  |
| tAZ                    | Output release time                  | -     | 10  | -     | 10  | -     | 10  | -     | 10  | -     | 10  | -     | 10  |
| tZAH                   | Output enable time                   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   |
| tMLI                   | Interlocking time                    | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   |
| tCS                    | CRC word setup time (at device side) | 15    | -   | 10    | -   | 7     | -   | 7     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   |
| tCH                    | CRC word Hold time (at device side)  | 5     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   |
| tACK                   | Hold time after -DMACK negation      | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   |
| tIORDYZ                | Pull-up time before DSTROBE release  | -     | 20  | -     | 20  | -     | 20  | -     | 20  | -     | 20  | -     | 20  |
| (all values are in ns) |                                      |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |

Figure 30. Ultra DMA cycle timings—Device Terminating Read

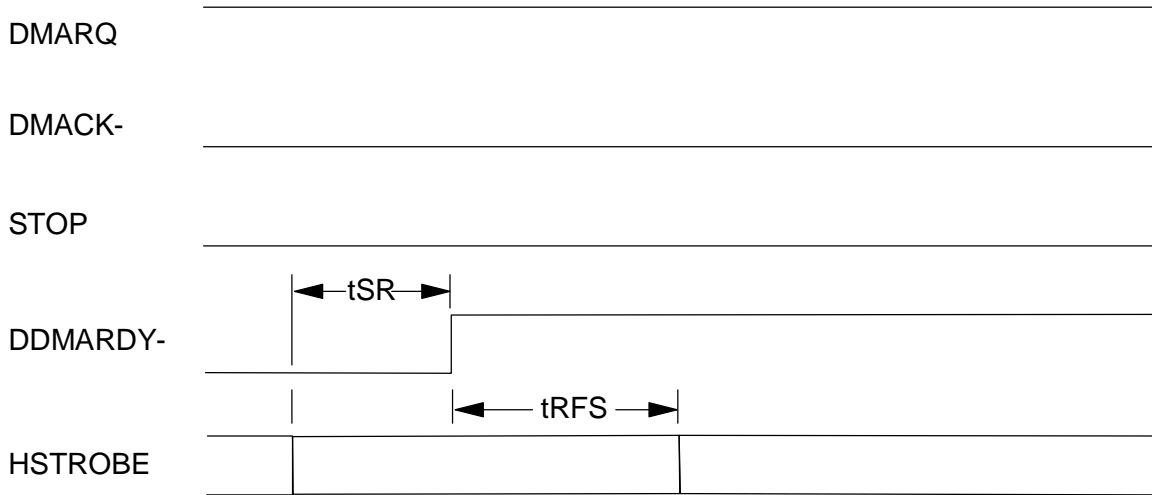
### 9.1.7.5 Initiating Write DMA



| Signal names           | Parameter descriptions             | MODE0 |     | MODE1 |     | MODE2 |     | MODE3 |     | MODE4 |     | MODE5 |     |
|------------------------|------------------------------------|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|
|                        |                                    | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX |
| tUI                    | Unlimited interlock time           | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   |
| tACK                   | Setup time before -DMACK assertion | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   |
| tENV                   | Envelope time                      | 20    | 70  | 20    | 70  | 20    | 70  | 20    | 55  | 20    | 55  | 20    | 50  |
| tZIORDY                | Wait time before driving DSTROBE   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   | 0     | -   |
| tLI                    | Limited interlock time             | 0     | 150 | 0     | 150 | 0     | 150 | 0     | 100 | 0     | 100 | 0     | 75  |
| tCYC                   | Cycle time                         | 112   | -   | 73    | -   | 54    | -   | 39    | -   | 25    | -   | 17    | -   |
| t2CYC                  | 2 Cycle time                       | 230   | -   | 153   | -   | 115   | -   | 86    | -   | 57    | -   | 38    | -   |
| tDS                    | Data setup time (at device side)   | 15    | -   | 10    | -   | 7     | -   | 7     | -   | 5     | -   | 4     | -   |
| tDH                    | Data hold time (at device side)    | 5     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   |
| (all values are in ns) |                                    |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |

Figure 31. Ultra DMA cycle timings—Initiating Write

### 9.1.7.6 Device Pausing Write DMA

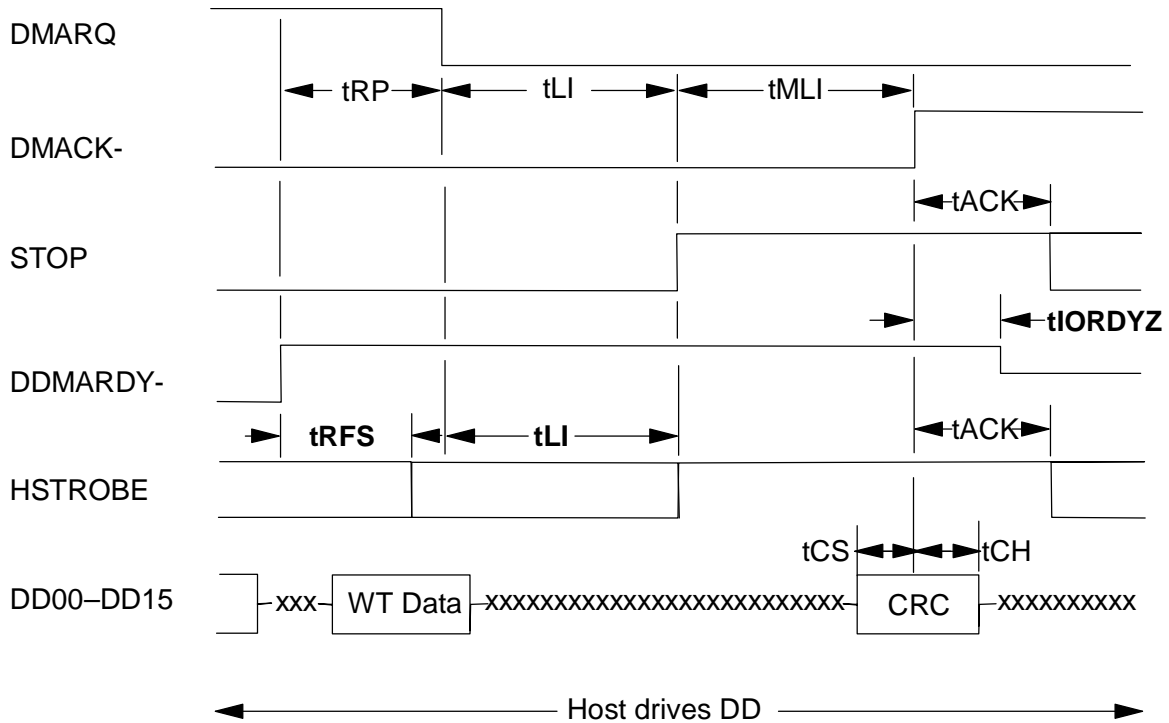


| Signal names           | Parameter descriptions        | MODE0 |     | MODE1 |     | MODE2 |     | MODE3 |     | MODE4 |     | MODE5 |     |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|
|                        |                               | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX |
| tSR                    | Strobe to ready response time | –     | 50  | –     | 30  | –     | 20  | –     | –   | –     | –   | –     | –   |
| tRFS                   | Ready to final strobe time    | –     | 75  | –     | 70  | –     | 60  | –     | 60  | –     | 60  | –     | 50  |
| (all values are in ns) |                               |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |

*Note: When a device does not meet tSR, it must be ready to receive 3 more strobes after DDMARDY- is negated.*

Figure 32. Ultra DMA cycle timings—Device pausing Write

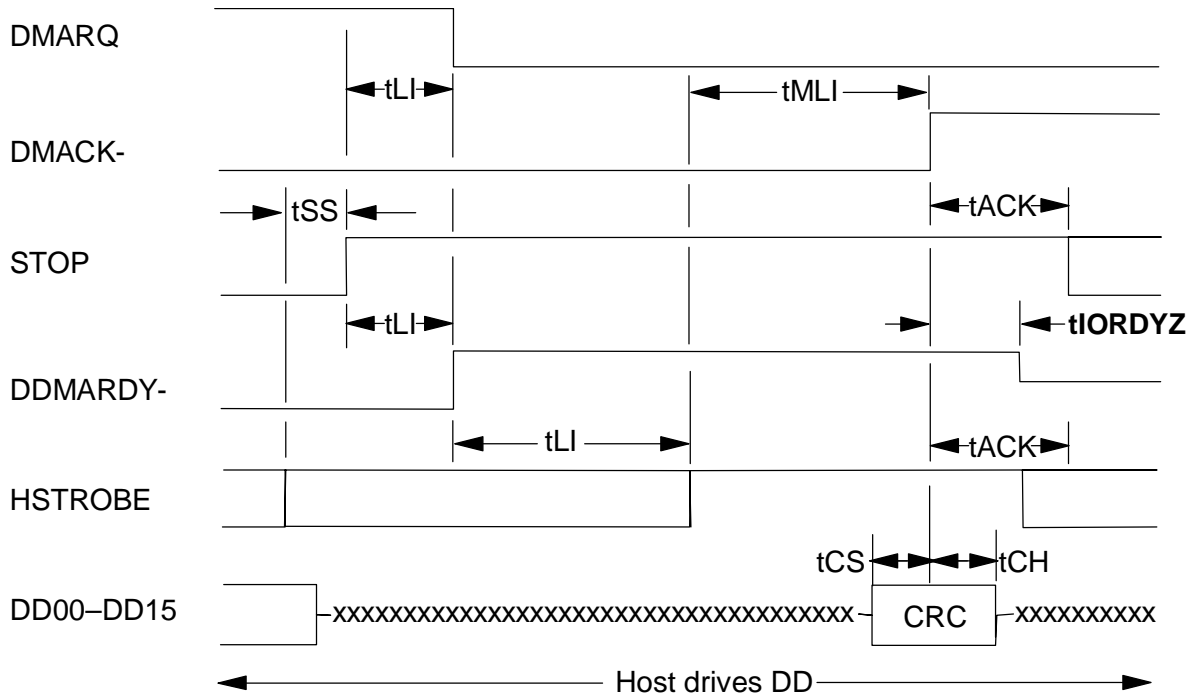
### 9.1.7.7 Device Terminating Write DMA



| Signal names           | Parameter descriptions               | MODE0 |     | MODE1 |     | MODE2 |     | MODE3 |     | MODE4 |     | MODE5 |     |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|
|                        |                                      | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX |
| tRFS                   | Ready to final strobe time           | -     | 75  | -     | 70  | -     | 60  | -     | 60  | -     | 60  | -     | 50  |
| tRP                    | Ready to pause time                  | 160   | -   | 125   | -   | 100   | -   | 100   | -   | 100   | -   | 85    | -   |
| tLI                    | Limited interlock time               | 0     | 150 | 0     | 150 | 0     | 150 | 0     | 100 | 0     | 100 | 0     | 75  |
| tMLI                   | Interlocking time                    | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   |
| tCS                    | CRC word setup time (at device side) | 15    | -   | 10    | -   | 7     | -   | 7     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   |
| tCH                    | CRC word hold time (at device side)  | 5     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   |
| tACK                   | Hold time after -DMACK negation      | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   |
| tIORDYZ                | Pull-up time before HSTROBE release  | -     | 20  | -     | 20  | -     | 20  | -     | 20  | -     | 20  | -     | 20  |
| (all values are in ns) |                                      |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |

Figure 33. Ultra DMA cycle timings—Device terminating Write

### 9.1.7.8 Host Terminating Write DMA



| Signal names           | Parameter descriptions               | MODE0 |     | MODE1 |     | MODE2 |     | MODE3 |     | MODE4 |     | MODE5 |     |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|
|                        |                                      | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX | MIN   | MAX |
| $t_{SS}$               | Time from strobe to stop assertion   | 50    | -   | 50    | -   | 50    | -   | 50    | -   | 50    | -   | 50    | -   |
| $t_{LI}$               | Limited interlock time               | 0     | 150 | 0     | 150 | 0     | 150 | 0     | 100 | 0     | 100 | 0     | 75  |
| $t_{MLI}$              | Interlock time                       | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   |
| $t_{CS}$               | CRC word setup time (at device side) | 15    | -   | 10    | -   | 7     | -   | 7     | -   | 5     | -   | 4     | -   |
| $t_{CH}$               | CRC word hold time (at device side)  | 5     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   | 5     | -   |
| $t_{ACK}$              | Hold time after -DMACK negation      | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   | 20    | -   |
| $t_{IORDYZ}$           | Pull-up time before HSTROBE release  | -     | 20  | -     | 20  | -     | 20  | -     | 20  | -     | 20  | -     | 20  |
| (all values are in ns) |                                      |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |       |     |

Figure 34. Ultra DMA cycle timings—Host terminating Write

## 9.1.8 Addressing of registers

The host addresses the drive through a set of registers called the Task File. These registers are mapped into the I/O space. Two chip select lines (CS0- and CS1-) and three address lines (DA0-02) are used to select one of these registers, while a DIOR- or DIOW- is provided at the specified time.

The CS0- is used to address Command Block registers while the CS1- is used to address the Control Block registers. The following table shows the I/O address map.

| CS0- | CS1- | DA2 | DA1 | DA0 | DIOR- = 0 (Read)               | DIOW- = 0 (Write)   |
|------|------|-----|-----|-----|--------------------------------|---------------------|
|      |      |     |     |     | <b>Command Block Registers</b> |                     |
| 0    | 1    | 0   | 0   | 0   | Data Reg.                      | Data Reg.           |
| 0    | 1    | 0   | 0   | 1   | Error Reg.                     | Features Reg.       |
| 0    | 1    | 0   | 1   | 0   | Sector count Reg.              | Sector count Reg.   |
| 0    | 1    | 0   | 1   | 1   | Sector number Reg.             | Sector number Reg.  |
| 0    | 1    | 1   | 0   | 0   | Cylinder low Reg.              | Cylinder low Reg.   |
| 0    | 1    | 1   | 0   | 1   | Cylinder high Reg.             | Cylinder high Reg.  |
| 0    | 1    | 1   | 1   | 0   | Drive/Head Reg.                | Drive/Head Reg.     |
| 0    | 1    | 1   | 1   | 1   | Status Reg.                    | Command Reg.        |
|      |      |     |     |     | <b>Control Block Registers</b> |                     |
| 1    | 0    | 1   | 1   | 0   | Alt. Status Reg.               | Device control Reg. |

*Note: "Addr." field is shown just as an example.*

During DMA operation (from writing to the command register until an interrupt) all registers are not accessible. For example, the host is not supposed to read the status register contents before interrupt—the value is invalid.

Figure 35. I/O address map

## 9.1.9 Cabling

The maximum cable length from the host system to the drive plus circuit pattern length in the host system must not exceed 18 inches.

For data transfers greater than 8.3 MB/s it is recommended that designs measures are used to reduce cable noise and cross-talk. Examples of design modification include use of shorter cable, bus termination, and the use of shielded cable.

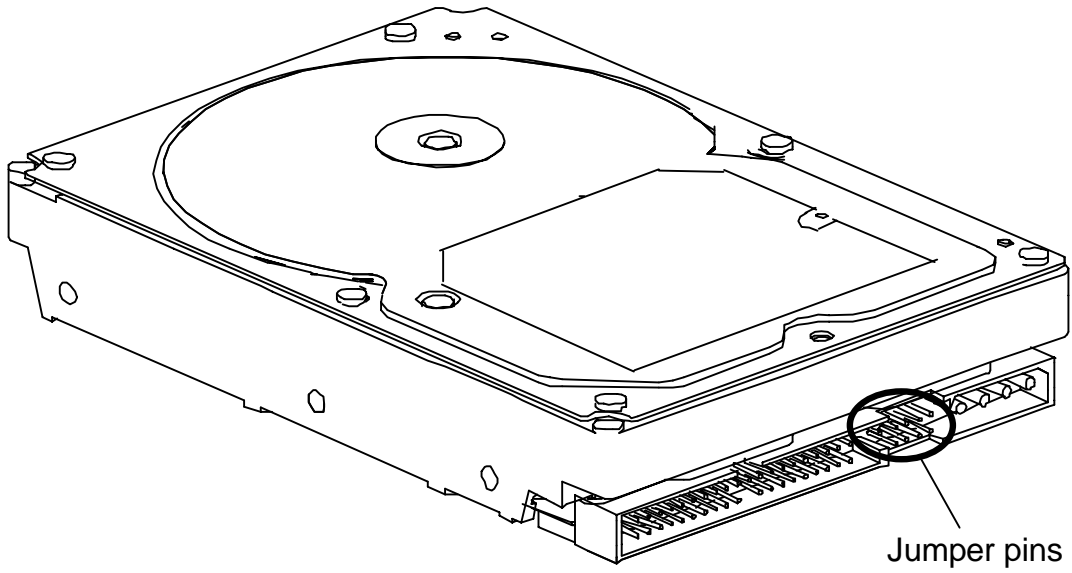
The 80-conductor ATA cable assembly (P/N SFF-8049) must be used for systems operating at Ultra DMA modes 3, 4 and 5.

---

## 9.1.10 Jumper settings

### 9.1.10.1 Jumper pin location

---

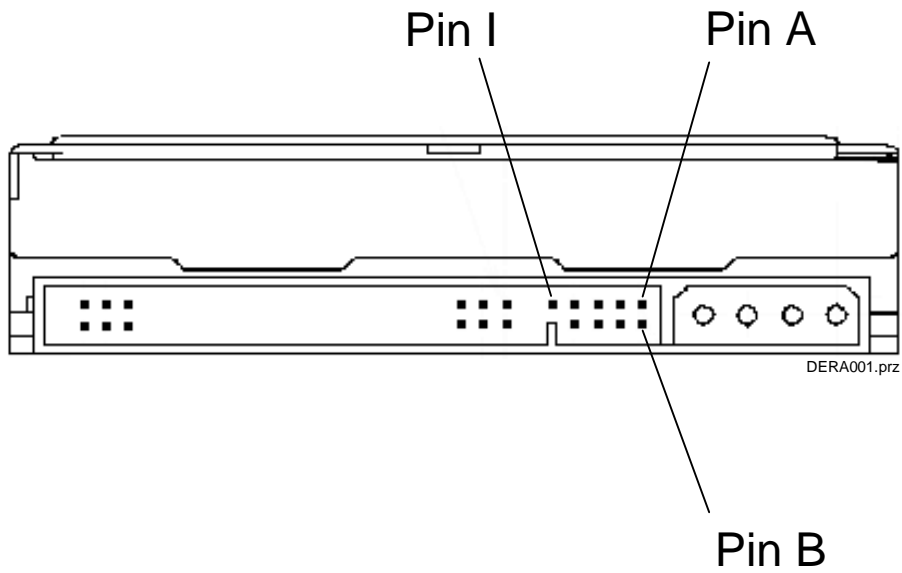


---

Figure 36. Jumper pin location

### 9.1.10.2 Jumper pin identification

---



---

Figure 37. Jumper pin identifications

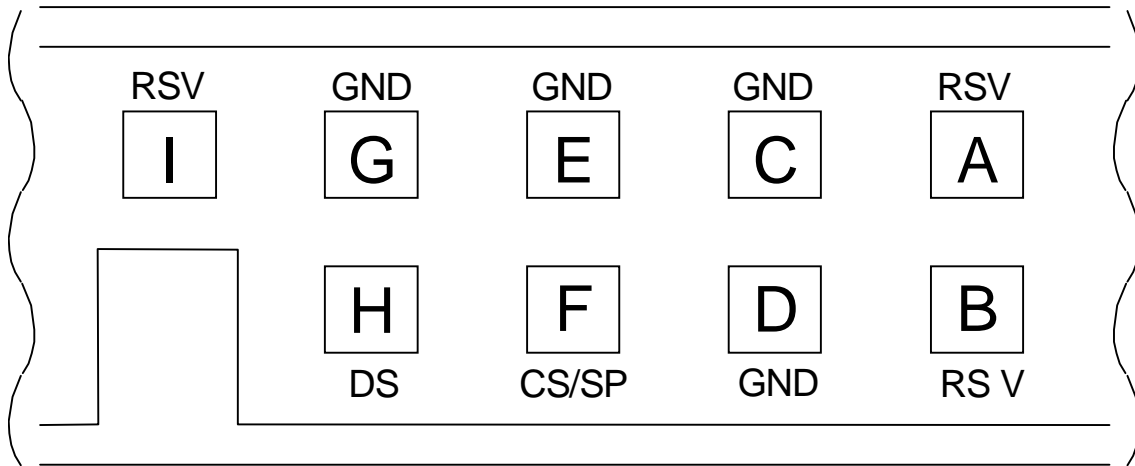
There are four jumper settings as shown in the following sections:

- Normal use
- 15 heads
- 2 GB clip
- Auto spin disable

Each category is exclusive. The pin assignment of the 9-pin jumper used to select "Device 0", "Device 1", "Cable Selection", and "Device 0 with Device 1 Present" is shown in the following illustration.

The "Device 0" setting automatically recognizes Device 1 if present.

The "Device 0 with Device 1 present" setting is for a slave device that does not comply with the ATA specification.



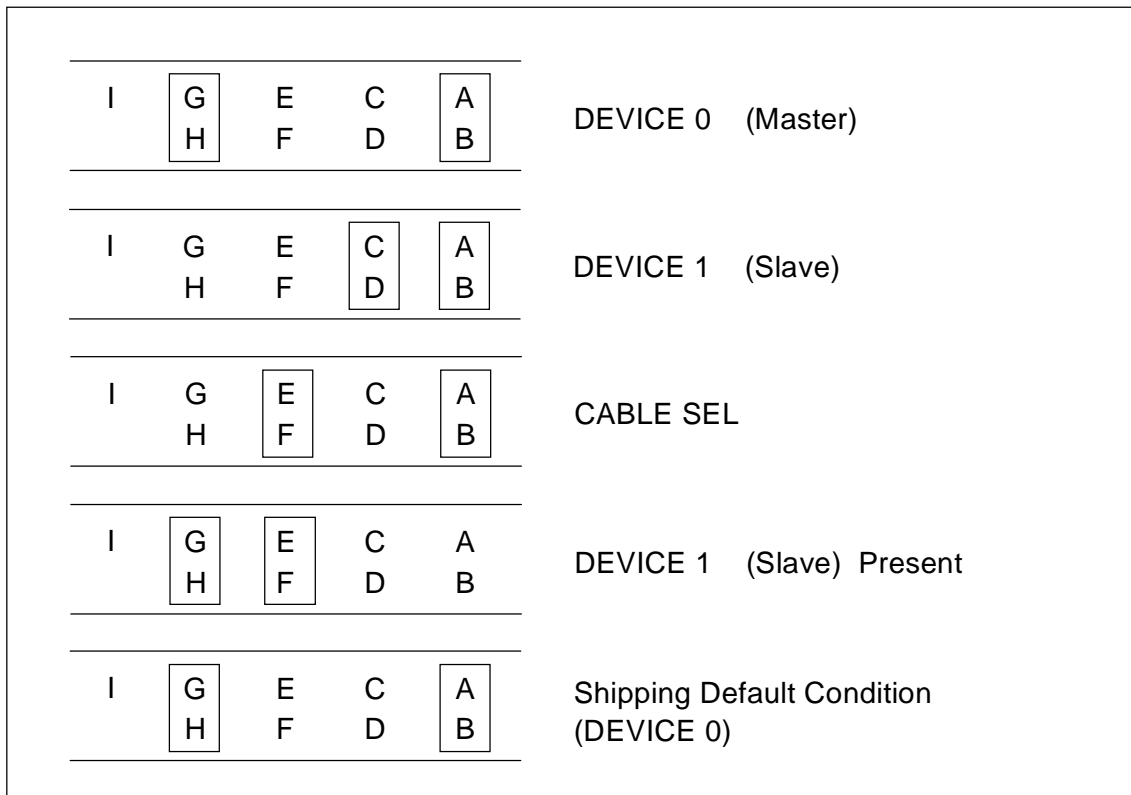
*Notes: In conventional terminology, 'Device0' means 'Master' and 'Device1' means 'Slave'.*

Figure 38. Jumper pin assignment



### 9.1.10.3 Jumper block setting position—normal use

The following illustration shows the jumper positions used to select Device 0, Device 1, Cable Selection, or Device 0 with Device 1 Present.



**Notes:**

1. To enable the CSEL mode (Cable Selection mode) the jumper block must be installed at position E-F. In the CSEL mode, the drive address is determined as follows:
  - When CSEL is grounded or at a low level, the drive address is 0 (Device0).
  - When CSEL is open or at a high level, the drive address is 1 (Device1).
2. Installing or removing the jumper blocks at position A-B or position C-D does not affect selection of either Device or Cable Selection mode.
3. The drive is set as Device 0—master—when shipped. The shipping default jumpers are located at positions A-B and G-H.

Figure 39. Jumper block setting position

#### 9.1.10.4 Jumper block setting position—15 head

The positions of jumper blocks shown below is used to select Device 0 or Device 1, Cable Selection, or Device 0 with Device 1 Present, setting 15 logical heads instead of the default 16 logical head models.

---

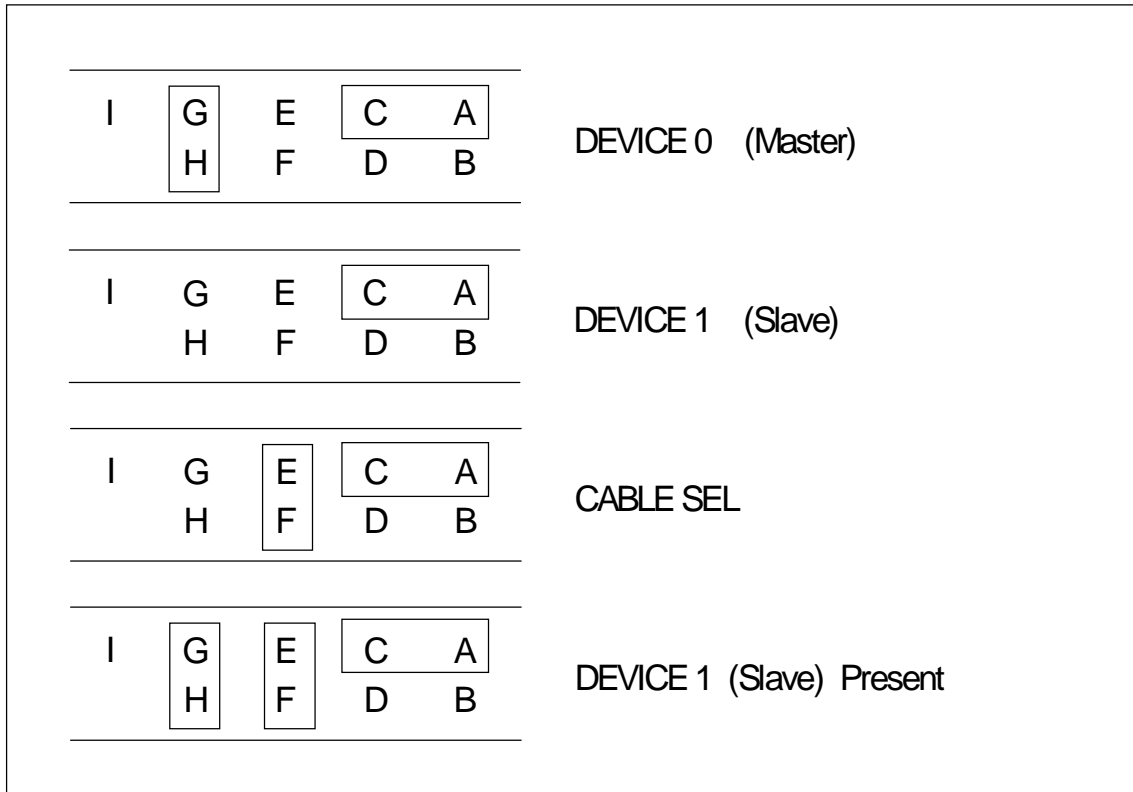
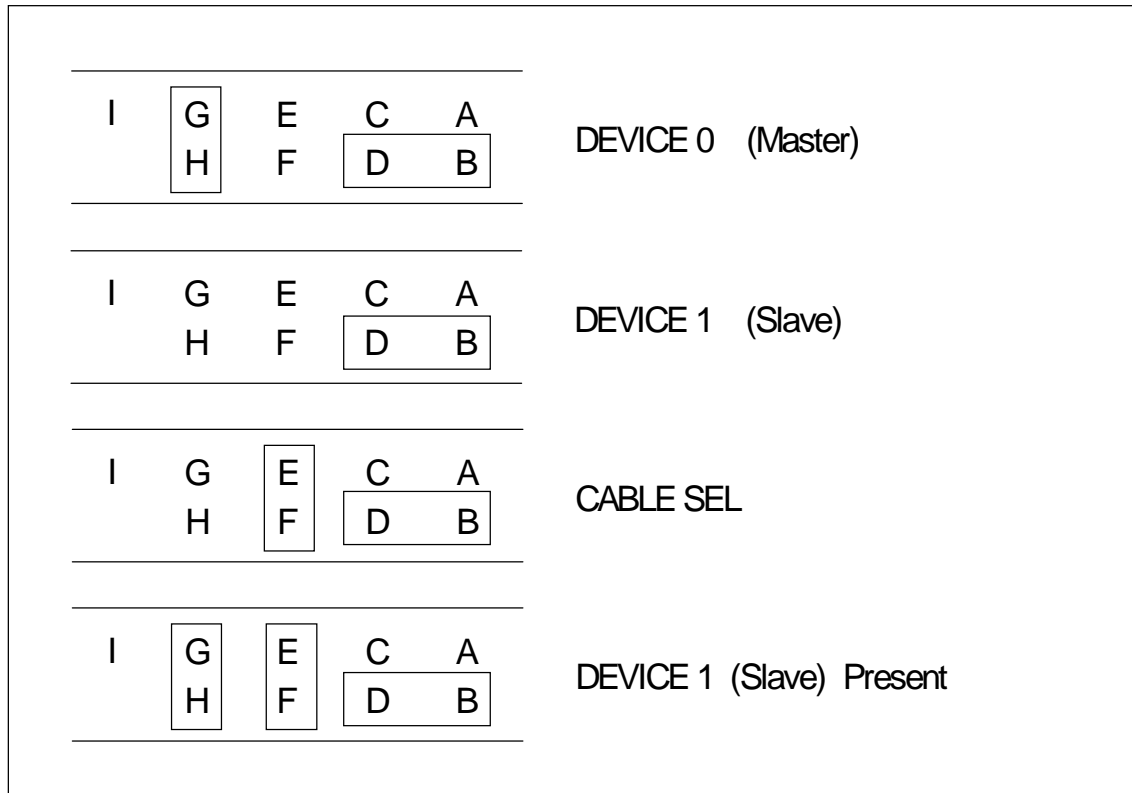


Figure 40. Jumper block setting position—15 head

### 9.1.10.5 Jumper block setting position—2GB/32GB clip

The positions of the jumper blocks shown below are used to select Device 0 or Device 1, Cable Selection, and Device 0 with Device 1 Present, setting the drive capacity down either to 2 GB or 32 GB for compatibility purposes.

- Use the 2 GB clip for drives having an logical block address (LBA) of less than 66055248.
- Use the 32 GB clip for drives having an LBA greater than 66055248.



**Notes:**

*For 40/60 GB models—factory default capacities greater than 32 GB:*

*The jumper setting acts as a 32 GB clip which clips the LBA to 66055248. The CHS is unchanged from the factory default of 16383/16/63.*

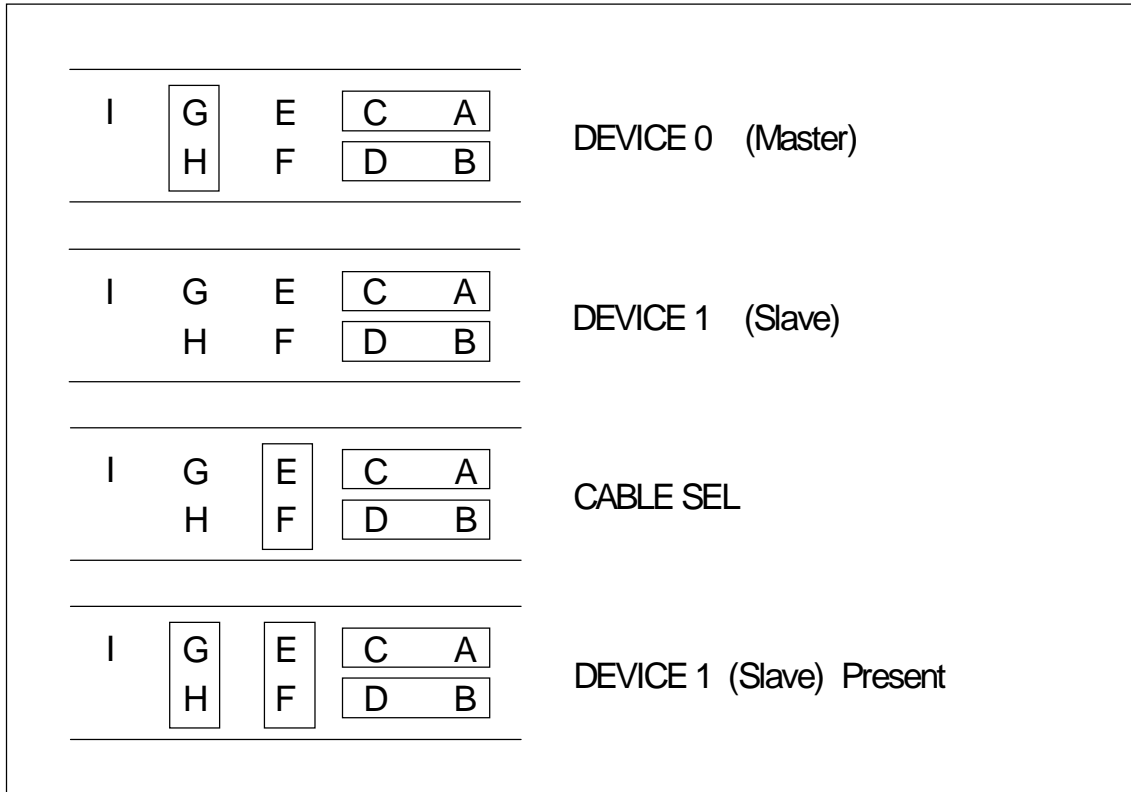
*For 10/20/30 GB models—factory default capacities less than 32 GB:*

*The jumper setting acts as a 2 GB clip which clips the CHS to 4096/16/63. The LBA is unchanged from the factory default setting (depending upon the particular model).*

Figure 41. Jumper block setting position—2 GB/32 GB clip

### 9.1.10.6 Jumper block setting position—power up in standby

The jumpers positions shown in the following illustration are used for enabling power up in standby.



**Notes:**

1. These jumper settings are used for limiting power supply current when multiple drives are used.
2. The command to spin up is SET FEATURES (subcommand 07h).

Figure 42. Jumper block setting position—power up in standby

## 9.2 Environment

### 9.2.1 Temperature and humidity

| Operating conditions         |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Temperature                  | 5 to 55°C <sup>1</sup>  |
| Relative humidity            | 8 to 90% non-condensing |
| Maximum wet bulb temperature | 29.4°C non-condensing   |
| Maximum temperature gradient | 15°C/Hour               |
| Altitude                     | -300 to 3,048 m         |
| Shipping conditions          |                         |
| Temperature                  | -40 to 65°C             |
| Relative humidity            | 5 to 95% non-condensing |
| Maximum wet bulb temperature | 35°C non-condensing     |
| Altitude                     | -300 to 12,000 m        |
| Storage conditions           |                         |
| Temperature                  | 0 to 65°C               |
| Relative humidity            | 5 to 95% non-condensing |
| Maximum wet bulb temperature | 35°C non-condensing     |
| Altitude                     | -300 to 12,000 m        |

<sup>1</sup>The system is responsible for providing sufficient air movement to maintain a surface temperature below 60°C at the center of the top cover of the drive.

Figure 43. Operation, shipping, and storage temperature and humidity requirements table

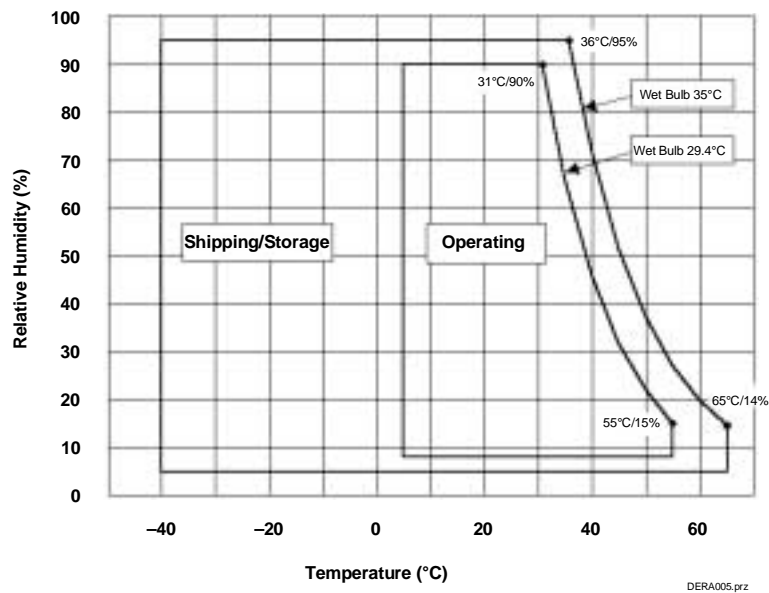


Figure 44. Environmental specifications—operation, shipping, storage temperature, and humidity requirements

---

## 9.2.2 Corrosion test

The hard disk drive shows no signs of corrosion inside or outside of hard drive assembly and is functional after being subjected to seven days of a 50°C temperature and 90% relative humidity.

---

## 9.3 DC power requirements

The following voltage specifications apply at the drive power connector. Damage to the drive electronics may result if the power supply cable is connected or disconnected while power is being applied to the drive (no hot plugging or unplugging is allowed). Connections to the drive should be made from a low voltage, isolated secondary circuit (SELV). There is no special power on/off sequencing required.

### 9.3.1 Input voltage

---

| Supply Input voltage (Volts) | During run and spin up (Volts) | Absolute maximum spike voltage (Volts) |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| 5                            | 5 ± 5%                         | 7 <sup>1</sup>                         |
| 12                           | 12 +10%, -8%                   | 15 <sup>1</sup>                        |

<sup>1</sup>Power supply voltage spikes in excess of the maximum values specified in the table may damage the drive electronics.

---

Figure 45. Input voltage requirements

### 9.3.2 Power supply current—typical

---

|                                 | +5 Volts PS current | +12 Volts PS current | Total power (Watts) |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
|                                 | Amps (RMS)          | Amps (RMS)           |                     |
| Idle average                    | 0.29                | 0.43                 | 6.7                 |
| Idle ripple (peak-to-peak)      | 0.36                | 0.50                 | –                   |
| Low RPM idle                    | 0.17                | 0.19                 | 3.2                 |
| Unload idle                     | 0.17                | 0.30                 | 4.5                 |
| Seek peak                       | 0.54                | 2.00                 | –                   |
| Seek average <sup>1</sup>       | 0.34                | 0.67                 | 9.8                 |
| Start up (maximum)              | 0.80                | 2.00                 | –                   |
| Random R/W peak                 | 1.13                | 2.00                 | –                   |
| Random R/W average <sup>2</sup> | 0.49                | 0.63                 | 10.1                |
| Standby average                 | 0.17                | 0.015                | 1.0                 |
| Sleep average                   | 0.10                | 0.015                | 0.7                 |

Except for a peak of less than 100 us duration

<sup>1</sup> Random seeks at 40% duty cycle.

<sup>2</sup> Seek duty = 30%, W/R duty = 45%, Idle Duty = 25%

---

Figure 46. Power supply current—typical

### 9.3.3 Power supply generated ripple at drive power connector

| DC Volts (V) | Maximum peak-to-peak ripple voltage (mV p-p) | Frequency range (MHz) |
|--------------|--|-----------------------|
| +5           | 100  | 0–10                  |
| +12          | 150  | 0–10                  |

Figure 47. Power supply generated ripple at drive power connector

During drive start up and seeking a 12-Volt ripple is generated by the drive—this is referred to as dynamic loading. If the power of several drives is daisy chained together, then the power supply ripple plus the dynamic loading of the other drives must remain within the above regulation tolerance. A common supply with separate power leads to each drive is a more desirable method of power distribution.

To prevent external electrical noise from interfering with the performance of the drive, the drive must be held in position by four screws in a user's system frame. There must be no electrical level difference at the four screw positions and less than  $\pm 300$  millivolts peak-to-peak difference level must be maintained between the drive cover and the ground of the drive power connector.

### 9.3.4 Start up current

Since each drive model has the identical spindle motor design, rush currents shorter than 10 us in duration are ignored in the measurement of the start up current of each model. For this reason a single start up current graph represents each of the respective models in this specification.

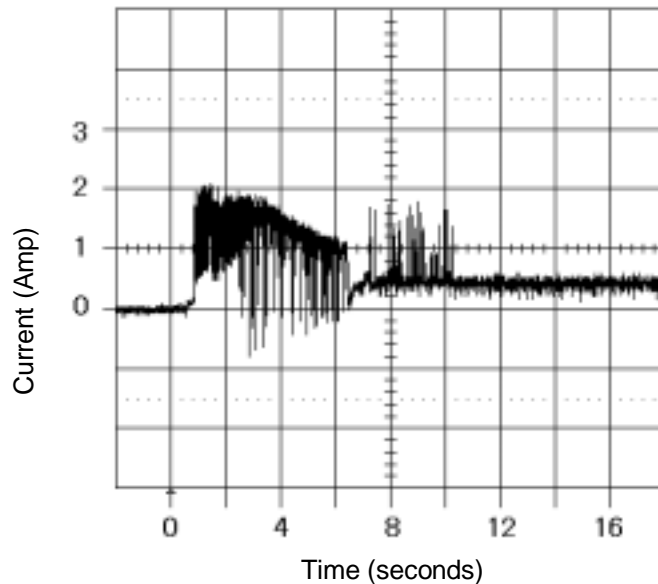


Figure 48. Typical current wave form of the 12 V line at drive start up—listed by drive model capacity

### 9.3.5 Energy consumption efficiency

---

| Model by capacity in GB | Energy consumption efficiency (W/GB) |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 10                      | 0.67                                 |
| 20                      | 0.34                                 |
| 30                      | 0.22                                 |
| 40                      | 0.17                                 |
| 50                      | 0.13                                 |
| 60                      | 0.11                                 |

---

Figure 49. Energy consumption efficiency

Energy consumption efficiency is calculated as power consumption at idle average. The unit of measure for the energy consumption efficiency is given in Watt/Gigabyte (W/GB).

---

## 9.4 Reliability

### 9.4.1 Data integrity

No more than one sector is lost at a power loss condition during a write operation when the write cache option is disabled. If the write cache option is active, then the data in the write cache will be lost. To prevent drive data loss it is recommended that the last write access before power off be issued after setting the write cache to off.

### 9.4.2 Cable noise interference

To avoid any degradation of performance throughput or error rate when the interface cable is routed on top of or comes in contact with the hard disk assembly, the drive must be grounded electrically to the system frame by four drive mounting screws. The common mode noise or voltage level difference between the system frame and power cable ground or AT interface cable ground must be in the allowable level specified in the Section 9.3 "DC Power Requirements" on page 48.

### 9.4.3 Start/stop cycles

The drive withstands a minimum of 40,000 start/stop cycle under a 40°C environment and a minimum of 10,000 start/stop cycle under any other extreme temperature or humidity environment within the operating range (refer to Section 9.2.1 on page 47).

### 9.4.4 Life

Expected product life is 5 years under typical desktop PC usage conditions:

- 333 Power-On Hours (POH) per month.
- Seeking/writing/reading operation to be 20% of POH at 40°C or lower environmental temperature.

### 9.4.5 Preventive maintenance

None.



### 9.4.6 Data reliability

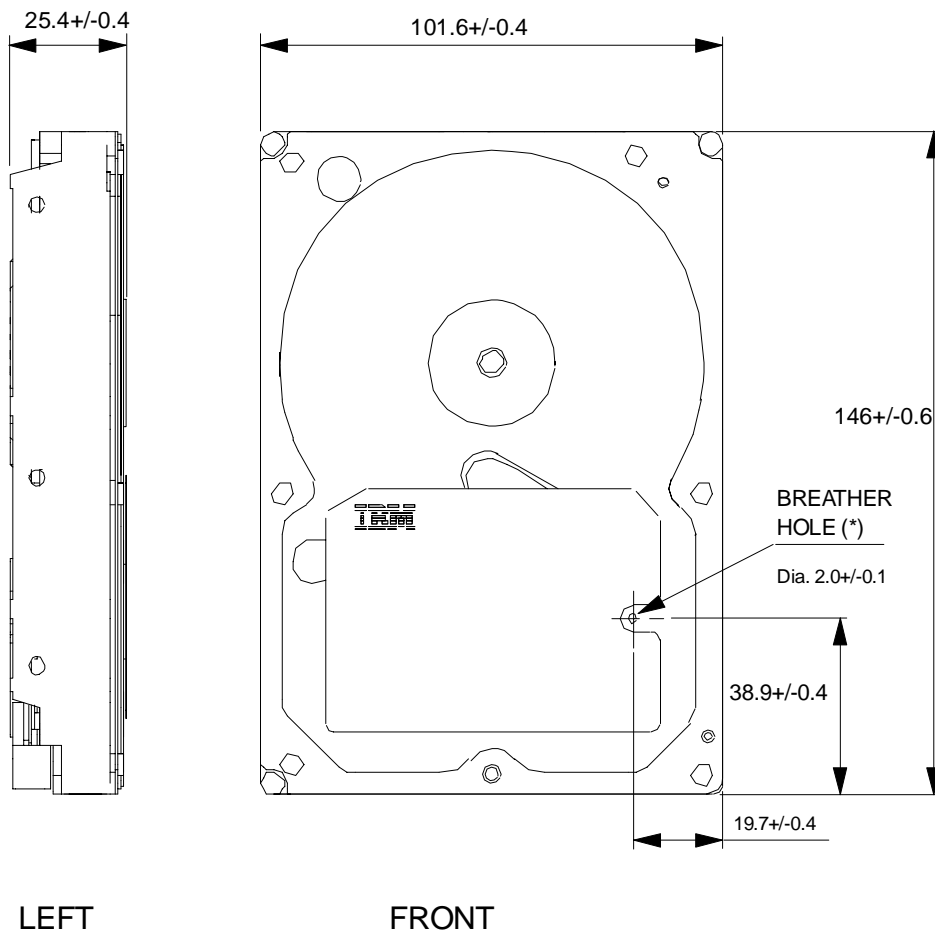
Probability of not recovering data is 1 in  $10^{13}$  bits read.

ECC On-The-Fly correction:

- 1 Symbol : 8 bits
- 3 Interleave.
- 12 ECC's are embedded into each interleave.
- 15 Symbols—5 Symbols per each interleave—for On The Fly correction
- This implementation always recovers 5 random burst errors and a 113 bits continuous burst error.

## 9.5 Mechanical specifications

### 9.5.1 Physical dimensions

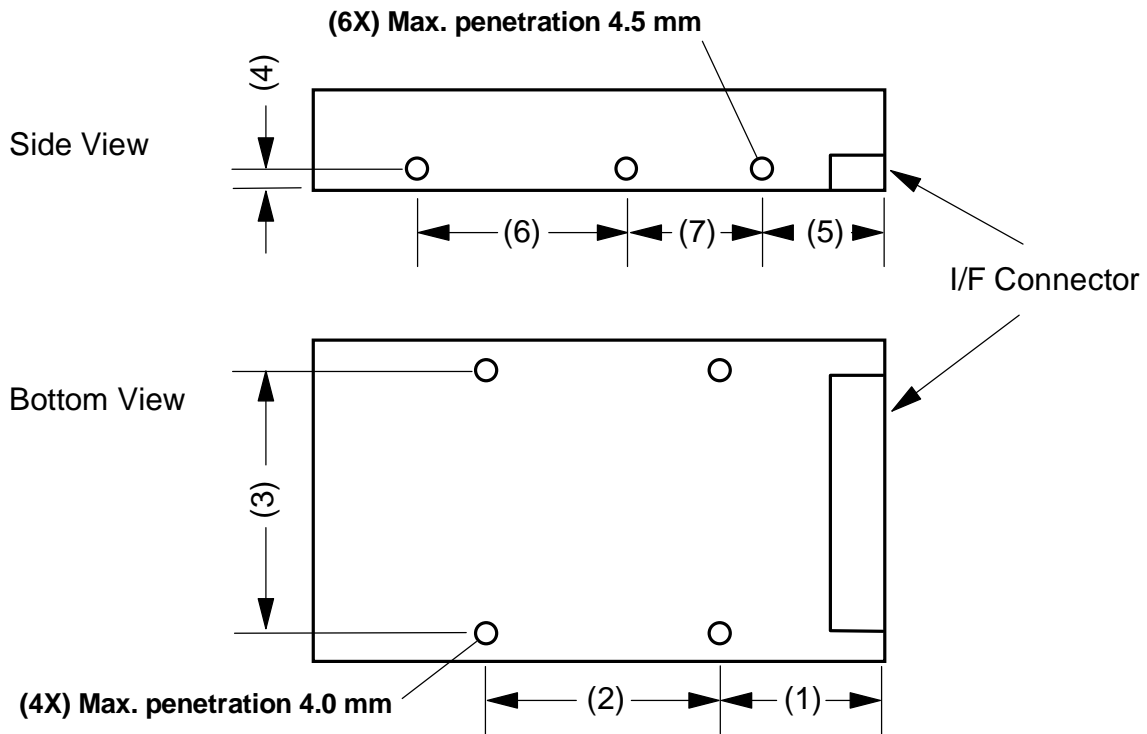


**\* DO NOT BLOCK THE BREATHER HOLE.**

| Dimension  | Height (mm)    | Width (mm)      | Length (mm)     | Weight (gram) |
|------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|
| All Models | $25.4 \pm 0.4$ | $101.6 \pm 0.4$ | $146.0 \pm 0.6$ | 600 (Max.)    |

Figure 50. Hard disk assembly—physical dimensions

## 9.5.2 Mounting holes



| Dimension reference number                    | (1)             | (2)             | (3)             | (4)            | (5)            | (6)            | (7)            |
|---|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Dimension (mm)                                | $41.28 \pm 0.5$ | $44.45 \pm 0.2$ | $95.25 \pm 0.2$ | $6.35 \pm 0.2$ | $28.5 \pm 0.5$ | $60.0 \pm 0.2$ | $41.6 \pm 0.2$ |
| <b>Mounting screw thread count = 6-32 UNC</b> |                 |                 |                 |                |                |                |                |

Notes: Recommended screw torque to be applied to mounting screws is 0.6–1.0 Nm (6–10 kgcm).

Figure 51. Mounting hole locations, screw thread count, screw depths, and screw torque specs

### 9.5.3 Connector and jumper description

---

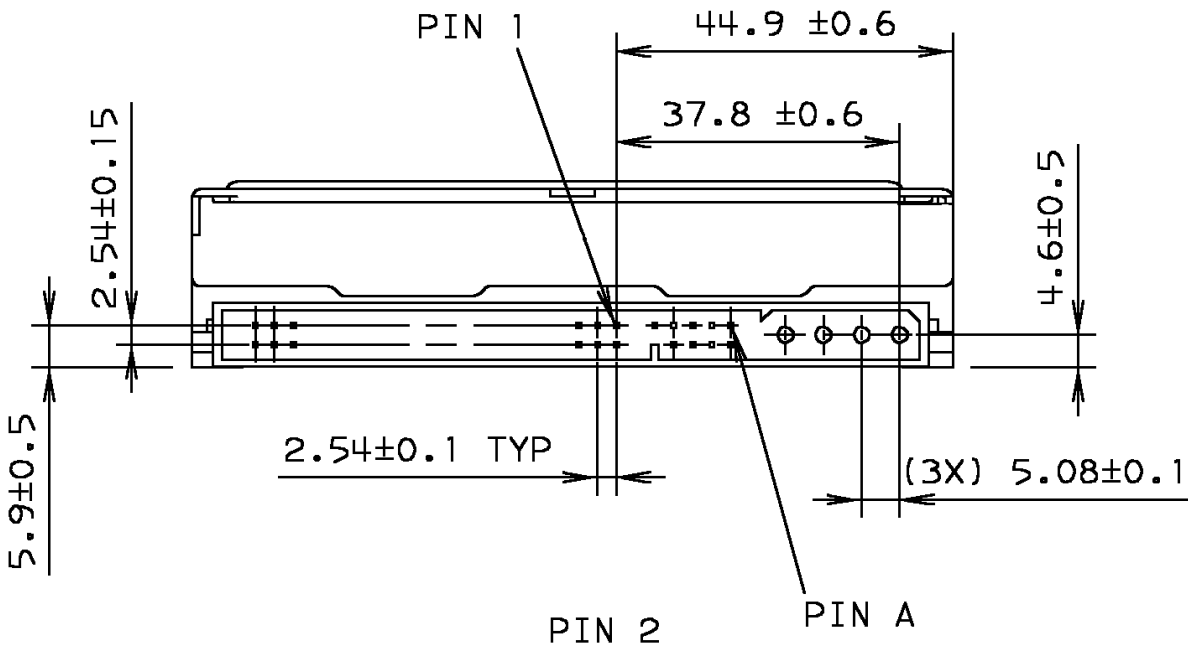


Figure 52. Connector and jumper description

### 9.5.4 Drive mounting

The drive will operate in all axes (6 directions). Performance and error rate will stay within specification limits if the drive is operated in the other orientations from which it was formatted.

For reliable operation it is recommended that the drive be mounted by using appropriate length side or bottom mounting screws with 6-32 UNC thread count or equivalent mounting hardware. Proper mounting is essential to prevent the drive from excessive motion or vibration during seek operation or spindle rotation.

Consult with your IBM Corporation distribution representative if your mounting application may possibly be considered out of compliance with this specification.

When performing any drive level vibration and shock test, mount the drive to the table using the bottom four screws.

Do not cover the breather hole—illustrated in Figure 50 on page 51—to keep air pressure inside of the disk enclosure equal to the atmospheric pressure outside of the drive enclosure.

### 9.5.5 Head unload and actuator lock

During an unload the heads are moved out from the disks to protect the disk data during shipping, moving, and storage. Upon power down the heads are automatically unloaded from the disk area. The head actuator locking mechanism secures the heads in the unload position.

## 9.6 Vibration and shock

All vibration and shock measurements in this section are for the disk drive without the mounting attachments for specific systems. The input level requirements for all vibration and shock measurements in this specification mandates that mounting be applied to the normal drive mounting points.

### 9.6.1 Operating vibration

#### 9.6.1.1 Random vibration

The hard disk drive meets IBM Standard C-S 1-9711-002 (1990-03) for the V5L applied to the horizontal direction and V4 applied to the vertical direction. The test consists of 30 minutes of random vibration using the power spectral density (PSD) levels shown in the following table. The test is applied in each of three mutually perpendicular axes. The disk drive will operate without non-recoverable errors when subjected to the above random vibration levels.

| Frequency (Hz) |  | 5    | 17  | 45  | 48  | 62  | 65  | 150 | 200  | 500  | RMS (G) |
|----------------|--|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|------|---------|
| Direction      | Horizontal<br>$\times 10^{-3}$<br>(G <sup>2</sup> /Hz) | 0.02 | 1.1 | 1.1 | 8.0 | 8.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 0.5  | 0.5  | 0.67    |
|                | Vertical<br>$\times 10^{-3}$<br>(G <sup>2</sup> /Hz)   | 0.02 | 1.1 | 1.1 | 8.0 | 8.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 0.08 | 0.08 | 0.56    |

Figure 53. Random vibration PSD profile break points—operating

The overall RMS (Root mean square) level is 0.67 G for horizontal vibration and 0.56 G for vertical.

#### 9.6.1.2 Swept sine vibration

The hard disk drive will meet the criteria shown below while operating in the specified conditions:

- No errors occur with 0.5 G 0-peak, 5–300–5 Hz sine wave, 0.5 oct/min sweep rate with 3-minute dwells at 2 major resonances.
- No data loss occurs with 1 G 0-peak, 5–300–5 Hz sine wave, 0.5 oct/min sweep rate with 3-minute dwells at 2 major resonances.

### 9.6.2 Nonoperating vibration

The drive will not sustain permanent damage or loss of previously recorded data after being subjected to the following environmental conditions.

### 9.6.2.1 Random vibration

The test consists of a random vibration applied for each of three mutually perpendicular axes with the time duration of 10 minutes per axis. The PSD levels for the test simulate the shipping and relocation environment shown in the following table. (IBM STD C-H 1-9711-005)

---

| Frequency (Hz)     | 2     | 4    | 8    | 40    | 55   | 70   | 200   |
|--------------------|-------|------|------|-------|------|------|-------|
| G <sup>2</sup> /Hz | 0.001 | 0.03 | 0.03 | 0.003 | 0.01 | 0.01 | 0.001 |

Note: The overall RMS level of vibration is 1.04 G RMS.

---

Figure 54. Random vibration PSD profile break points—nonoperating

### 9.6.2.2 Swept sine vibration

- 2 G (0–peak), 5–500–5 Hz sine wave
- 0.5 oct/min sweep rate
- 3 minutes dwell at two major resonances

### 9.6.3 Operating shock

The hard disk drive meets IBM Standard C-S 1-9711-007 for the S5 product classification.

The drive meets the following criteria while operating in respective conditions described in the following bullet list. The shock test consists of ten shocks inputs in each axis and in each direction for a total of 60. There must be a delay between shock pulses that is long enough to allow the drive to complete all of the necessary error recovery procedure.

- No error occurs with a 10 G half-sine shock pulse of 11 ms duration in all models.
- No data loss occurs with a 30 G half-sine shock pulse of 4 ms duration in all models.
- No data loss occurs with a 55 G half-sine shock pulse of 2 ms duration in all models.

### 9.6.4 Nonoperating shock

The drive will operate with no degradation of performance after being subjected to a shock pulses with the following characteristics.

#### 9.6.4.1 Trapezoidal shock wave

- Approximately square (trapezoidal) pulse shape.
- Approximate rise and fall time of pulse = 1 ms.
- Average acceleration level = 50 G. (Average response curve value during the time following the 1 ms rise time and before the 1 ms fall with a time "duration of 11 ms")
- Minimum velocity change = 4.23 m/s

### 9.6.4.2 Sinusoidal shock wave

The shape is approximately a half-sine pulse. The following table shows the maximum acceleration level and duration.

---

| Acceleration level (G) | Duration (ms)  |
|------------------------|----------------|
| 75 (all models)        | 11             |
| 350                    | 2<br>(3 disks) |
| 400                    | 2<br>(1 disk)  |
| 400                    | 2<br>(2 disks) |

---

Figure 55. Sinusoidal shock wave

### 9.6.5 Rotational shock

All shock inputs shall be applied around the actuator pivot axis.

---

| Duration (ms) | Rad/s <sup>2</sup> |
|---------------|--------------------|
| 1             | 30,000             |
| 2             | 20,000             |

---

Figure 56. Rotational Shock

## 9.7 Acoustics—Unit Sound Power level testing

The sound power emission levels are measured in accordance with ISO 7779. The upper limit criteria of the octave sound power levels are given in Bels relative to one pico watt and are shown in the following table.

---

| Number of disks |                       | 1             |            | 2             |            | 3             |            |
|-----------------|-----------------------|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| Mode            |                       | Typical (Bel) | Max. (Bel) | Typical (Bel) | Max. (Bel) | Typical (Bel) | Max. (Bel) |
| Idle            |                       | 3.0           | 3.4        | 3.0           | 3.4        | 3.1           | 3.4        |
| Operating       | Performance seek mode | 3.4           | 3.7        | 3.4           | 3.7        | 3.4           | 3.7        |
|                 | Quiet seek mode       | 3.1           | 3.5        | 3.1           | 3.5        | 3.2           | 3.5        |

---

Figure 57. Sound power levels

**Mode definition:****Idle mode**

The drive is powered on, disks spinning, track following, and unit ready to receive and respond to interface commands.

**Operating mode**

Continuous random cylinder selection and seek operation of the actuator with a dwell time at each cylinder. The seek rate for the drive is to be calculated as follows:

Dwell time =  $0.5 \times 60/\text{RPM}$

Seek rate =  $0.4/(\text{Average seek time} + \text{Dwell time})$

---

## 9.8 Identification—labels

The following labels are affixed to every drive shipped from the drive manufacturing location in accordance with the appropriate hard disk drive assembly drawing.

- A label containing the IBM logo, the IBM part number, and the statement “Made by IBM Japan Ltd.”, or IBM equivalent.
- A label containing the drive model number, the manufacturing date code, the formatted capacity, the place of manufacture, and the UL/CSA/TUV/CE mark logos.
- A bar code label containing the drive serial number.
- A label containing the jumper pin description.
- A user designed label per agreement.

The above labels may be integrated with other labels.

---

## 9.9 Safety

### 9.9.1 UL and CSA standard conformity

The product is qualified per UL 1950 Third Edition and CAN/CSA C22.2 No. 950-M95, Third Edition, for use in Information Technology Equipment including Electric Business Equipment.

The UL recognition or the CSA certification is maintained for the product life.

The UL and C-UL recognition mark or the CSA monogram for CSA certification appear on the drive.

### 9.9.2 IEC compliance

The product is certified for compliance to IEC 950. The product complies with these IEC requirements for the life of the product.

### 9.9.3 German Safety Mark

The product is approved by TUV on Test requirement—EN 60 950:1992/A1-4—but the GS mark is not applicable to internal devices such as this product.

## 9.9.4 Flammability

The printed circuit boards used in this product are made of material with the UL recognized flammability rating of V-1 or better. The flammability rating is marked or etched on the board. All other parts not considered electrical components are made of material with a UL recognized flammability rating of V-1 or better. However, small mechanical parts such as cable ties, washers, screws, and PC board mounts may be made of material with a UL recognized flammability rating of V-2.

## 9.9.5 Safe handling

The product is conditioned for safe handling in regards to sharp edges and corners.

## 9.9.6 Environment

The product does not contain any known or suspected carcinogens.

Environmental controls meet or exceed all applicable government regulations in the country of origin. Safe chemical usage and manufacturing control are used to protect the environment. An environmental impact assessment has been done on the manufacturing process used to build the drive, the drive itself and the disposal of the drive at the end of its life.

Production also meets the requirements of the international treaty on chlorofluorocarbon (CFC) control known as the United Nations Environment Program Montreal Protocol, and as ratified by the member nations. Material to be controlled include CFC-11, CFC-12, CFC-113, CFC-114, CFC-115, Halon 1211, Halon 1301 and Halon 2402. Although not specified by the Protocol, CFC-112 is also controlled. In addition to the Protocol IBM requires the following:

- All packaging used for the shipment of the product do not use controlled CFCs in the manufacturing process.
- All manufacturing processes for parts or assemblies include printed circuit boards, does not use controlled CFC materials.

## 9.9.7 Secondary circuit protection

Spindle/VCM driver module includes a 12 Volt over current protection circuit.

---

## 9.10 Electromagnetic compatibility

When installed in a suitable enclosure and exercised with a random accessing routine—at the maximum data rate—the hard disk drive meets the following worldwide EMC requirements:

- The United States Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and Regulations (Class B), Part 15. The IBM Corporate Standard C-S 2-0001-026 (A 6 dB buffer shall be maintained on the emission requirements).
- The European Economic Community (EEC) directive number 76/889 related to the control of radio frequency interference and the Verband Deutscher Elektrotechniker (VDE) requirements of Germany (GOP). IBM National Bulletin NB 2-0001-400, NB 2-0001-401, and NB 2-0001-403.
- Electrostatic Discharge Susceptibility limits for a Class 2 ESD environment specified in IBM Corporate Standard C-S 2-0001-005.
- Radiated Electromagnetic Susceptibility (RES) as specified in IBM Corporate Standard C-S 2-0001-012.
- Spectrum Management Agency (SMA) EMC requirements of Australia. The SMA has approved two forms of C-Tick Marking for IBM. IBM National Bulletin NB 2-0001-406.



---

## 9.11 CE Mark

The product is declared to be in conformity with requirements of the following EC directives under the sole responsibility of Yamato Lab, IBM Japan Ltd. or IBM United Kingdom Ltd.

Council Directive 89/336/EEC on the approximation of laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility.

---

## 9.12 C-Tick Mark

The product complies with the following Australian EMC standard:

Limits and methods of measurement of radio disturbance characteristics of information technology, AS/NZS 3548 : 1995 Class B.

This page intentionally left blank.

---

## Part 2. Interface specification

This page intentionally left blank.

---

## 10.0 General

---

### 10.1 Introduction

This specification describes the host interface of the IC35L0xxAVER07-0.

The interface conforms to the Working Document of Information Technology - AT Attachment with Packet Interface Extension (ATA/ATAPI-5), Revision 3, dated 29 February 2000, with certain limitations described in Section 11.0 , "Deviations From Standard" on page 65.

---

### 10.2 Terminology

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| <b>Device</b> | Device indicates IC35L0xxAVER07-0.                        |
| <b>Host</b>   | Host indicates the system that the device is attached to. |

This page intentionally left blank.

---

## 11.0 Deviations from standard

The device conforms to the referenced specifications with the following deviations:

**Check Power Mode.**

Check Power Mode command returns FFh to Sector Count Register when the device is in Idle mode. This command does not support 80h as the return value.

**Hard Reset.**

Hard reset response is not the same as that of power on reset. Refer to Section 13.1, "Reset response," on page 75 for details.

This page intentionally left blank.



## 12.0 Registers

| Addresses |      |     |     |     | Functions                            |                             |
|-----------|------|-----|-----|-----|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| CS0-      | CS1- | DA2 | DA1 | DA0 | READ (DIOR-)                         | WRITE (DIOW-)               |
| N         | N    | X   | X   | X   | Data bus high impedance <sup>1</sup> | Not used                    |
| Addresses |      |     |     |     | Control block registers              |                             |
| N         | A    | 0   | X   | X   | Data bus high impedance <sup>1</sup> | Not used                    |
| N         | A    | 1   | 0   | X   | Data bus high impedance <sup>1</sup> | Not used                    |
| N         | A    | 1   | 1   | 0   | Alternate Status                     | Device Control              |
| N         | A    | 1   | 1   | 1   | Device Address                       | Not used                    |
| Addresses |      |     |     |     | Command block registers              |                             |
| A         | N    | 0   | 0   | 0   | Data                                 | Data                        |
| A         | N    | 0   | 0   | 1   | Error Register                       | Features                    |
| A         | N    | 0   | 1   | 0   | Sector Count                         | Sector Count                |
| A         | N    | 0   | 1   | 1   | Sector Number                        | Sector Number               |
| A         | N    | 0   | 1   | 1   | <sup>2</sup> LBA bits 0-7            | <sup>2</sup> LBA bits 0-7   |
| A         | N    | 1   | 0   | 0   | Cylinder Low                         | Cylinder Low                |
| A         | N    | 1   | 0   | 0   | <sup>2</sup> LBA bits 8-15           | <sup>2</sup> LBA bits 8-15  |
| A         | N    | 1   | 0   | 1   | Cylinder High                        | Cylinder High               |
| A         | N    | 1   | 0   | 1   | <sup>2</sup> LBA bits 16-23          | <sup>2</sup> LBA bits 16-23 |
| A         | N    | 1   | 1   | 0   | Device/Head.                         | Device/Head                 |
| A         | N    | 1   | 1   | 0   | <sup>2</sup> LBA bits 24-27          | <sup>2</sup> LBA bits 24-27 |
| A         | N    | 1   | 1   | 1   | Status                               | Command                     |
| A         | A    | X   | X   | X   | Invalid address                      | Invalid address             |

<sup>1</sup> "imped" means "impedance".

<sup>2</sup> Mapping of registers in LBA mode

Logic conventions:   A = signal asserted  
                           N = signal negated  
                           X = does not matter which signal is asserted

Figure 58. Register Set

Communication to or from the device is through an I/ O Register that routes the input or output data to or from registers addressed by the signals from the host (CS0-, CS1-, DA2, DA1, DA0, DIOR- and DIOW-).

The Command Block Registers are used for sending commands to the device or posting status from the device.

The Control Block Registers are used for device control and to post alternate status.

---

## 12.1 Alternate Status Register

---

| Alternate Status Register |     |    |              |     |     |     |     |
|---------------------------|-----|----|--------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7                         | 6   | 5  | 4            | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY                       | RDY | DF | DSC/<br>SERV | DBQ | COR | IDX | ERR |

Figure 59. Alternate Status Register

This register contains the same information as the Status Register. The only difference is that reading this register does not imply interrupt acknowledge or clear a pending interrupt. See Section 12.13, "Status Register" on page 72 for the definition of the bits in this register.

---

## 12.2 Command Register

This register contains the command code being sent to the device. Command execution begins immediately after this register is written. The command set is shown in Figure 76 on pages 101 and 102. All other registers required for the command must be set up before writing the Command Register.

---

## 12.3 Cylinder High Register

This register contains the high order bits of the starting cylinder address for any disk access. At the end of the command this register is updated to reflect the current cylinder number.

In LBA Mode this register contains Bits 16–23. At the end of the command this register is updated to reflect the current LBA Bits 16–23.

The cylinder number may range from zero to the number of cylinders minus one.

---

## 12.4 Cylinder Low Register

This register contains the low order bits of the starting cylinder address for any disk access. At the end of the command this register is updated to reflect the current cylinder number.

In LBA Mode this register contains Bits 8–15. At the end of the command this register is updated to reflect the current LBA Bits 8–15.

The cylinder number may be from zero to the number of cylinders minus one.

---

## 12.5 Data Register

This register is used to transfer data blocks between the device data buffer and the host. It is also the register through which sector information is transferred on a Format Track command and configuration information is transferred on an Identify Device command.

All data transfers are 16 bits wide, except for ECC byte transfers, which are 8 bits wide. Data transfers are PIO only.

The register contains valid data only when DRQ=1 in the Status Register.

---

## 12.6 Device Control Register

| Device Control Register |   |   |   |   |      |      |   |
|-------------------------|---|---|---|---|------|------|---|
| 7                       | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2    | 1    | 0 |
| -                       | - | - | - | 1 | SRST | -IEN | 0 |

---

Figure 60. Device Control Register

### Bit Definitions

**SRST (RST)** Software Reset. The device is held reset when RST=1. Setting RST=0 re-enables the device.

The host must set RST=1 and wait for at least 5 us before setting RST=0 to ensure that the device recognizes the reset.

**-IEN** Interrupt Enable. When -IEN=0 and the device is selected, device interrupts to the host will be enabled. When -IEN=1 or the device is not selected, device interrupts to the host will be disabled.

---

## 12.7 Drive Address Register

| Drive Address Register |      |     |     |     |     |      |      |
|------------------------|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|------|
| 7                      | 6    | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1    | 0    |
| HIZ                    | -WTG | -H3 | -H2 | -H1 | -H0 | -DS1 | -DS0 |

---

Figure 61. Drive Address Register

This register contains the inverted drive select and head select addresses of the currently selected drive.

### Bit Definitions

**HIZ** High Impedance. This bit is not driven and will always be in a high impedance state.

**-WTG** -Write Gate. This bit is 0 when writing to the disk device is in progress.

**-H3,-H2,-H1,-H0-** -Head Select. These four bits are the one's complement of the binary coded address of the currently selected head. -H0 is the least significant.

- DS1**            -Drive Select 1. Drive select bit for Device 1, active low. DS1=0 when Device 1 (slave) is selected and active.
- DS0**            -Drive Select 0. Drive select bit for Device 0, active low. DS0=0 when Device 0 (master) is selected and active.

## 12.8 Device/Head Register

| Device/Head Register |   |   |     |     |     |     |     |
|----------------------|---|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7                    | 6 | 5 | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| 1                    | L | 1 | DRV | HS3 | HS2 | HS1 | HS0 |

Figure 62. Device/Head Register

This register contains the device and head numbers.

### Bit Definitions

- L**                Binary encoded address mode select. When L=0, addressing is by CHS mode. When L=1, addressing is by LBA mode.
- DRV**            Device. When DRV=0, Device 0 (master) is selected. When DRV=1, Device 1 (slave) is selected.

### HS3,HS2,HS1,HS0

Head Select. These four bits indicate binary encoded address of the head. HS0 is the least significant bit. At command completion these bits are updated to reflect the currently selected head.

The head number may be from zero to the number of heads minus one.

In LBA mode HS3 through HS0 contain bits 24–27 of the LBA. At command completion these bits are updated to reflect the current LBA bits 24–27.

## 12.9 Error Register

| Error Register |     |   |      |   |      |       |      |
|----------------|-----|---|------|---|------|-------|------|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4    | 3 | 2    | 1     | 0    |
| ICRCE          | UNC | 0 | IDNF | 0 | ABRT | TK0NF | AMNF |

Figure 63. Error Register

This register contains status from the last command executed by the device or a diagnostic code.

At the completion of any command except Execute Device Diagnostic the contents of this register are always valid even if ERR=0 is in the Status Register.

Following a power on, a reset, or completion of an Execute Device Diagnostic command, this register contains a diagnostic code. See Figure 67, "Diagnostic Codes" on page 76 for the definitions.

## Bit Definitions

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>ICRCE<br/>(CRC)</b> | Interface CRC Error. CRC=1 indicates a CRC error has occurred on the data bus during Ultra-DMA transfer.  |
| <b>UNC</b>             | Uncorrectable Data Error. UNC=1 indicates an uncorrectable data error has been encountered.   |
| <b>IDNF (IDN)</b>      | ID Not Found. IDN=1 indicates the ID field of the requested sector could not be found.  |
| <b>ABRT<br/>(ABT)</b>  | Aborted Command. ABT=1 indicates the requested command has been aborted due to a device status error or an invalid parameter in an output register. |
| <b>TK0NF<br/>(TON)</b> | Track 0 Not Found. T0N=1 indicates track 0 was not found during a Recalibrate command.  |
| <b>AMNF<br/>(AMN)</b>  | Address Mark Not Found. AMN=1 indicates that data address mark has not been found after finding the correct ID field for the requested sector.      |

---

## 12.10 Features Register

This register is command specific. This is used with the Set Features command and S.M.A.R.T. Function Set command.

---

## 12.11 Sector Count Register

This register contains the number of sectors of data requested to be transferred on a read or write operation between the host and the device. If the value in the register is set to 0, a count of 256 sectors is specified.

If the register is zero at command completion, the command was successful. If not successfully completed, the register contains the number of sectors which need to be transferred in order to complete the request.

The contents of the register are defined otherwise on some commands. These definitions are given in the command descriptions.

---

## 12.12 Sector Number Register

This register contains the starting sector number for any disk data access for the subsequent command. The sector number is from one to the maximum number of sectors per track.

In LBA mode this register contains Bits 0–7. At the end of the command this register is updated to reflect the current LBA Bits 0–7.

---

## 12.13 Status Register

---

| Status Register |      |    |              |     |      |     |     |
|-----------------|------|----|--------------|-----|------|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6    | 5  | 4            | 3   | 2    | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | DRDY | DF | DSC/<br>SERV | DRQ | CORR | IDX | ERR |

---

Figure 64. Status Register

This register contains the device status. The contents of this register are updated whenever an error occurs and at the completion of each command.

If the host reads this register when an interrupt is pending, it is considered to be the interrupt acknowledge. Any pending interrupt is cleared whenever this register is read.

If BSY=1, no other bits in the register are valid.

The use of bit 4 is command dependent. After the DMA Queued commands it is used as SERV. After any other commands are reset, it is used as DSC.

### Bit Definitions

- BSY** Busy. BSY=1 whenever the device is accessing the registers. The host should not read or write any registers when BSY=1. If the host reads any register when BSY=1, the contents of the Status Register will be returned.
- DRDY (RDY)** Device Ready. RDY=1 indicates that the device is capable of responding to a command. RDY will be set to zero during power on until the device is ready to accept a command. If the device detects an error while processing a command, RDY is set to zero until the Status Register is read by the host, at which time RDY is set back to one.
- DF** Device Fault. DF = 1 indicates that the device has detected a write fault condition. DF is set to zero after the Status Register is read by the host.
- DSC** Device Seek Complete. DSC=1 indicates that a seek has completed and the device head is settled over a track. DSC is set to zero by the device just before a seek begins. When an error occurs, this bit is not changed until the Status Register is read by the host at which time the bit again indicates the current seek complete status.
- When the device enters into or is in Standby mode or Sleep mode, this bit is set by device in spite of not spinning up.
- SERV (SRV)** Service. SRV is set to one when the device is ready to transfer data after it releases the bus for execution of a DMA Queued command.
- DRQ** Data Request. DRQ=1 indicates that the device is ready to transfer a word or byte of data between the host and the device. The host should not write the Command register when DRQ=1.
- CORR (COR)** Corrected Data. Always zero.
- IDX** Index. IDX=1 once per revolution. Since IDX=1 only for a very short time during each revolution, the host may not see it set to one even if the host is reading the Status Register continuously. Therefore the host should not attempt to use IDX for timing purposes.

**ERR**

Error. ERR=1 indicates that an error occurred during execution of the previous command. The Error Register should be read to determine the error type. The device sets ERR=0 when the next command is received from the host.

This page intentionally left blank.



---

## 13.0 General operation

---

### 13.1 Reset response

There are three types of resets in ATA:

#### Power On Reset (POR)

The device executes a series of electrical circuitry diagnostics, spins up the HDA, tests speed and other mechanical parameters, and sets default values.

#### Hard Reset (Hardware Reset)

RESET- signal is negated in ATA Bus. The device resets the interface circuitry as well as Soft Reset.

#### Soft Reset (Software Reset)

SRST bit in the Device Control Register is set, then is reset. The device resets the interface circuitry according to the Set Features requirement.

The actions of each reset is shown in the following figure.

---

|  | POR  | hard reset | soft reset |
|--|------|------------|------------|
| Aborting Host interface  | –    | O          | O          |
| Aborting Device interface  | –    | (*1)       | (*1)       |
| Initialization of hardware   | O    | X          | X          |
| Internal diagnostic  | O    | X          | X          |
| Spinning spindle   | O    | X          | X          |
| Initialization of registers (*2)   | O    | O          | O          |
| DASP handshake   | O    | O          | X          |
| PDIAG handshake  | O    | O          | O          |
| Reverting programmed parameters to default <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Number of CHS (set by Initialize Device Parameters)</li><li>• Multiple mode</li><li>• Write Cache</li><li>• Read look-ahead</li><li>• ECC bytes</li></ul> | O    | (*3)       | (*3)       |
| Disable Standby timer  | O    | X          | X          |
| Power mode   | (*5) | (*4)       | (*4)       |

O - execute  
X - not execute

#### Notes:

- (\*1) Execute after the data in write cache has been written
  - (\*2) Default value on POR is shown in Figure 66, "Default Register Values" on page 76
  - (\*3) The Set Features command with Feature register = CCh enables the device to revert these parameters to the power on defaults
  - (\*4) In the case of Sleep mode the device goes to Standby mode. In other cases the device does not change current mode
  - (\*5) Idle when Power-Up in Standby feature set is disabled. Standby when Power-Up in Standby feature set is enabled
- 

Figure 65. Reset Response table

---

## 13.2 Register initialization

---

| Register         | Default Value   |
|------------------|-----------------|
| Error            | Diagnostic Code |
| Sector Count     | 01h             |
| Sector Number    | 01h             |
| Cylinder Low     | 00h             |
| Cylinder High    | 00h             |
| Device/Head      | A0h             |
| Status           | 50h             |
| Alternate Status | 50h             |

---

Figure 66. Default Register Values

After power on, hard reset, or software reset, the register values are initialized as shown in the following figure.

---

| Code | Description                     |
|------|---------------------------------|
| 01h  | No error detected               |
| 02h  | Formatter device error          |
| 03h  | Sector buffer error             |
| 04h  | ECC circuitry error             |
| 05h  | Controller microprocessor error |
| 8xh  | Device 1 failed                 |

---

Figure 67. Diagnostic Codes

The meaning of the Error Register diagnostic codes resulting from power on, hard reset or the Execute Device Diagnostic command are shown in the preceding table.

---

## 13.3 Diagnostic and Reset considerations

For each Reset and Execute Device Diagnostic the diagnostic is done as follows:

### Power On Reset

DASP- is read by Device 0 to determine if Device 1 is present. If Device 1 is present, Device 0 must read PDIAG- to determine when it is valid to clear the BSY bit and whether Device 1 has powered on or reset without error. Otherwise Device 0 clears the BSY bit whenever it is ready to accept commands. Device 0 may assert DASP- to indicate device activity.

### Hard Reset, Soft Reset

If Device 1 is present Device 0 must read PDIAG- to determine when it is valid to clear the BSY bit and whether Device 1 has reset without any errors. Otherwise Device 0 must simply reset and clear the BSY bit. DASP- is asserted by Device 0—and Device 1 if it is present—in order to indicate device active.

### Execute Device Diagnostic

If Device 1 is present, Device 0 must read PDIAG- to determine when it is valid to clear the BSY bit and if Device 1 passed or failed the EXECUTE DEVICE DIAGNOSTIC command. Otherwise Device 0 must simply execute its diagnostics and then clear the BSY bit. DASP- is asserted by Device 0—and Device 1 if it is present—in order to indicate the device is active.

In all the above cases Power on, RESET-, Soft reset, and the EXECUTE DEVICE DIAGNOSTIC command the Device 0 Error register as shown in the following figure.

'x' indicates the appropriate Diagnostic Code for the Power on, RESET-, Soft Reset, or Device Diagnostic error.

| Device 1 present? | PDIAG- Asserted? | Device 0 Passed | Error Register |
|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Yes               | Yes              | Yes             | 01h            |
| Yes               | Yes              | No              | 0xh            |
| Yes               | No               | Yes             | 81h            |
| Yes               | No               | No              | 8xh            |
| No                | (not read)       | Yes             | 01h            |
| No                | (not read)       | No              | 0xh            |

Figure 68. Reset error register values

---

## 13.4 Sector Addressing Mode

All addressing of data sectors recorded on the device's media is by a logical sector address. The logical CHS address for all models is different from the actual physical CHS location of the data sector on the disk media.

All models of the drive support both Logical CHS Addressing Mode and LBA Addressing Mode as the sector addressing mode.

The host system may select either the currently selected CHS translation addressing or LBA addressing on a command-by-command basis by using the L bit in the DEVICE/HEAD register. A host system must set the L bit to 1 if the host uses the LBA Addressing mode.

### 13.4.1 Logical CHS Addressing Mode

The logical CHS addressing is made up of three fields: the cylinder number, the head number, and the sector number. Sectors are numbered from 1 to the maximum value allowed by the current CHS translation mode but cannot exceed 255 (0FFh). Heads are numbered from zero to the maximum value allowed by the current CHS translation mode but cannot exceed 15 (0Fh). Cylinders are numbered from zero to the maximum value allowed by the current CHS translation mode but cannot exceed 65535 (0FFFFh).

When the host selects a CHS translation mode using the INITIALIZE DEVICE PARAMETERS command, the host requests the number of sectors per logical track and the number of heads per logical cylinder. The device then computes the number of logical cylinders available in requested mode.

The default CHS translation mode is described in the Identify Device Information. The current CHS translation mode is also described in the Identify Device Information.

### 13.4.2 LBA Addressing Mode

Logical sectors on the device must be mapped linearly with the first LBA addressed sector (sector 0) being the same sector as the first logical CHS addressed sector (cylinder 0, head 0, sector 1). Regardless of the logical CHS translation mode currently in effect, the LBA address of a given logical sector does not change. The following formula is always true:

$$\text{LBA} = ((\text{cylinder} * \text{heads per cylinder} + \text{heads}) * \text{sectors per track}) + \text{sector} - 1$$

where *heads per cylinder* and *sectors per track* are the current translation mode values .

On LBA addressing mode the LBA value is set to the following register:

|               |                     |
|---------------|---------------------|
| Device/Head   | <--- LBA bits 27–24 |
| Cylinder High | <--- LBA bits 23–16 |
| Cylinder Low  | <--- LBA bits 15– 8 |
| Sector Number | <--- LBA bits 7– 0  |

---

## 13.5 Overlapped and queued feature

Overlap allows devices to perform a bus release so that the other device on the bus may be used. To perform a bus release the device clears both DRQ and BSY to zero. When selecting the other device during overlapped operations, the host shall disable interrupts via the nIEN bit on the currently selected device before writing the Device/Head register to select the other device.

The only commands that may be overlapped are the following:

|                                       |         |
|---------------------------------------|---------|
| <b>NOP (with 01h subcommand code)</b> | ('00'h) |
| <b>Read DMA Queued</b>                | ('C7'h) |
| <b>Service</b>                        | ('A2'h) |
| <b>Write DMA Queued</b>               | ('CC'h) |

For the READ DMA QUEUED and WRITE DMA QUEUED commands, the device may or may not perform a bus release. If the device is ready to complete the execution of the command, it may complete the command immediately. If the device is not ready to complete the execution of the command, the device may perform a bus release and complete the command via a service request.

Command queuing allows the host to issue concurrent commands to the same device. Only commands included in the overlapped feature set may be queued. If a queue exists when a non-queued command is received, the non-queued command must be aborted and the commands in the queue must be discarded. The ending status must be the ABORT command and the results are indeterminate.

The maximum queue depth supported by a device is indicated in word 73 of Identify Device information.

A queued command shall have a Tag provided by the host in the Sector Count register to uniquely identify the command. When the device restores register parameters during the execution of the SERVICE command, this Tag shall be restored so that the host may identify the command for which status is being presented. If a queued command is issued with a Tag value that is identical to the Tag value for a command already in the queue, the entire queue is aborted including the new command. The ending status is ABORT command and the results are indeterminate. If any error occurs, the command queue is aborted.

When the device is ready to continue processing a bus released command and BSY and DRQ are both cleared to zero, the device requests service by setting SERV to one, setting a pending interrupt, and asserting INTRQ if selected and if nIEN is cleared to zero. SERV shall remain set until all commands ready for service have been serviced. The pending interrupt must be cleared and the INTRQ negated by a Status register read or a write to the Command register.

When the device is ready to continue processing a bus released command and BSY or DRQ is set to one—that is the device is processing another command on the bus—and the device requests service by setting SERV to one. SERV shall remain set until all commands ready for service have been serviced. At command completion of the current command processing (i.e., when both BSY and DRQ are cleared to zero), the device shall process interrupt pending and INTRQ per the protocol for the command being completed. No additional interrupt shall occur due to other commands ready for service until after the SERV bit of the device has been cleared to zero.

When the device receives a new command while queued commands are ready for service, the device must execute the new command and process interrupt pending and INTRQ per the protocol for the new command. If the queued commands ready for service still exist at command completion of this command, SERV remains set to one but no additional interrupt shall occur due to commands ready for service.

When queuing commands, the host shall disable interrupts via the nIEN bit before writing a new command to the Command register and may re-enable interrupts after writing the command. When reading status at command completion of a command, the host shall check the SERV bit since the SERV bit may be set because the device is ready for service associated with another queued command. The host receives no additional interrupt to indicate that a queued command is ready for service.

---

## 13.6 Power management feature

The power management feature set permits a host to modify the behavior of a manner which reduces the power required to operate. The power management feature set provides a set of commands and a timer that enable a device to implement low power consumption modes.

The drive implements the following set of functions:

- A Standby timer
- Idle command
- Idle Immediate command
- Sleep command
- Standby command
- Standby Immediate command

### 13.6.1 Power modes

When the device is powered on the lowest power consumption occurs in the Sleep Mode. When in sleep mode, the device requires a reset to be activated.

In Standby Mode the device interface is capable of accepting commands, but as the media may not be immediately accessible, there is a delay while waiting for the spindle to reach operating speed.

In Idle Mode the device is capable of responding immediately to media access requests.

In Active Mode the device is executing a command or accessing the disk media with the read look-ahead function or the write cache function.

### 13.6.2 Power management commands

The Check Power Mode command enables a host to determine if a device is currently in, going into, or leaving standby mode.

The Idle and Idle Immediate commands move a device to idle mode immediately from the active or standby modes. The idle command also sets the standby timer count and starts the standby timer.

The Standby and Standby Immediate commands move a device to standby mode directly from the active or idle modes. The standby command also sets the standby timer count.

The Sleep command moves a device to sleep mode. The interface of the device becomes inactive at the completion of the sleep command. A reset is required to move a device out of sleep mode. When a device exits sleep mode, it enters Standby mode.

### 13.6.3 Standby timer

The standby timer provides a method for the device to automatically enter standby mode from either active or idle mode following a host programmed period of inactivity. If the device is in the active or idle mode, the device waits for the specified time period and—if no command is received—the device automatically enters the standby mode.

If the value of SECTOR COUNT register on Idle command or Standby command is set to 00h, the standby timer is disabled.

## 13.6.4 Interface capability for power modes

Each power mode affects the physical interface as defined in the following table.

---

| Mode    | BSY | RDY | Interface active | Media    |
|---------|-----|-----|------------------|----------|
| Active  | X   | X   | Yes              | Active   |
| Idle    | O   | 1   | Yes              | Active   |
| Standby | O   | 1   | Yes              | Inactive |
| Sleep   | O   | 1   | No               | Inactive |

---

Figure 69. Power conditions

Ready (RDY) is not a power condition. A device may post ready at the interface even though the media may not be accessible.

---

## 13.7 S.M.A.R.T. function

The intent of Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology (S.M.A.R.T) is to protect user data and prevent unscheduled system downtime that may be caused by predictable degradation and/or fault of the device. By monitoring and storing critical performance and calibration parameters, S.M.A.R.T devices employ sophisticated data analysis algorithms to predict the likelihood of near-term degradation or fault condition. By alerting the host system of a negative reliability status condition, the host system can warn the user of the impending risk of a data loss and advise the user of appropriate action.

### 13.7.1 Attributes

Attributes are the specific performance or calibration parameters that are used in analyzing the status of the device. Attributes are selected by the device manufacturer based on the ability of that attribute to contribute to the prediction of degrading or faulty conditions for that particular device. The specific set of attributes being used and the identity of these attributes is vendor specific and proprietary.

### 13.7.2 Attribute values

Attribute values are used to represent the relative reliability of individual performance or calibration attributes. The valid range of attribute values is from 1 to 253 decimal. Higher attribute values indicate that the analysis algorithms being used by the device are predicting a lower probability of a degrading or faulty condition existing. Accordingly, lower attribute values indicate that the analysis algorithms being used by the device are predicting a higher probability of a degrading or faulty condition.

### 13.7.3 Attribute thresholds

Each attribute value has a corresponding attribute threshold limit which is used for direct comparison to the attribute value to indicate the existence of a degrading or faulty condition. The numerical values of the attribute thresholds are determined by the device manufacturer through design and reliability testing and analysis. Each attribute threshold represents the lowest limit to which its corresponding attribute value can be equal while still retaining a positive reliability status. Attribute thresholds are set at the device manufacturer's factory and cannot be changed in the field. The valid range for attribute thresholds is from 1 through 253 decimals.

### **13.7.4 Threshold Exceeded Condition**

If one or more attribute values—whose Pre-failure bit of their status flag is set—are less than or equal to their corresponding attribute thresholds, then the device reliability status is negative indicating an impending degrading or faulty condition.

### **13.7.5 S.M.A.R.T. commands**

The S.M.A.R.T. commands provide access to attribute values, attribute thresholds, and other logging and reporting information.

### **13.7.6 Off-line read scanning**

The device provides the off-line read scanning feature with reallocation. This is the extension of the off-line data collection capability. The device performs the entire read scan with reallocation of the marginal sectors to prevent user data lost.

If interrupted by the host during the read scanning, the device services the host command.

### **13.7.7 Error log**

Logging of reported errors is supported. The device provides information on the last five errors which the device reported as described in the S.M.A.R.T. error log sector. The device may also provide additional vendor specific information on these reported errors. The error log is not disabled when S.M.A.R.T. is disabled. Disabling S.M.A.R.T. must disable the delivering of error log information via the S.M.A.R.T. READ LOG SECTOR command.

If a device receives a firmware modification, all error log data is discarded and the device error count for the life of the device is reset to zero.

### **13.7.8 Self-test**

The device provides the self-test features which are initiated by S.M.A.R.T. Execute Off-line Immediate command. The self-test checks the fault of the device, reports the test status in Device Attributes Data and stores the test result in the S.M.A.R.T. self-test log sector as described in the S.M.A.R.T. self-test log data structure. All S.M.A.R.T. attributes are updated accordingly during the execution of self-test.

If the drive is interrupted by the host during the self-tests, the device services the host command.

If the device receives a firmware modification, all self-test log data is discarded.

---

## **13.8 Security Mode Feature Set**

Security Mode Feature Set is a powerful security feature. With a device lock password, a user can prevent unauthorized access to a hard disk drive even if the device is removed from the computer.

The following commands are supported for this feature.



## 13.8.1 Security mode

The following security modes are provided:

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <b>Device Locked mode</b>   | The device disables media access commands after power on. Media access commands are enabled by either a security unlock command or a security erase unit command.  |
| <b>Device Unlocked mode</b> | The device enables all commands. If a password is not set this mode is entered after power on, otherwise it is entered by a security unlock or a security erase unit command.  |
| <b>Device Frozen mode</b>   | The device enables all commands except those which can update the device lock function, set/change password. The device enters this mode via a Security Freeze Lock command. It cannot quit this mode until power off. |

## 13.8.2 Security level

The following security levels are provided:

|                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <b>High level security</b>    | When the device lock function is enabled and the User Password is forgotten, the device can be unlocked via a Master Password.  |
| <b>Maximum level security</b> | When the device lock function is enabled and the User Password is forgotten, only the Master Password with a Security Erase Unit command can unlock the device. User data is then erased. |

## 13.8.3 Passwords

This function can have two kinds of passwords as described as follows:

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>Master Password</b> | <p>When the Master Password is set, the device does NOT enable the Device Lock Function and the device can NOT be locked with the Master Password, but the Master Password can be used for unlocking the device locked.</p> <p>Identify Device Information word 92 contains the value of the Master Password Revision Code set when the Master Password was last changed. Valid values are 0001h through FFFEh.</p> |
| <b>User Password</b>   | <p>The User Password should be given or changed by a system user. When the User Password is set, the device enables the Device Lock Function and the device is then locked on next power on reset or hard reset.</p>  |

The system manufacturer or dealer who intends to enable the device lock function for end-users must set the master password even if only single level password protection is required.

## 13.8.4 Operation example

### 13.8.4.1 Master Password setting

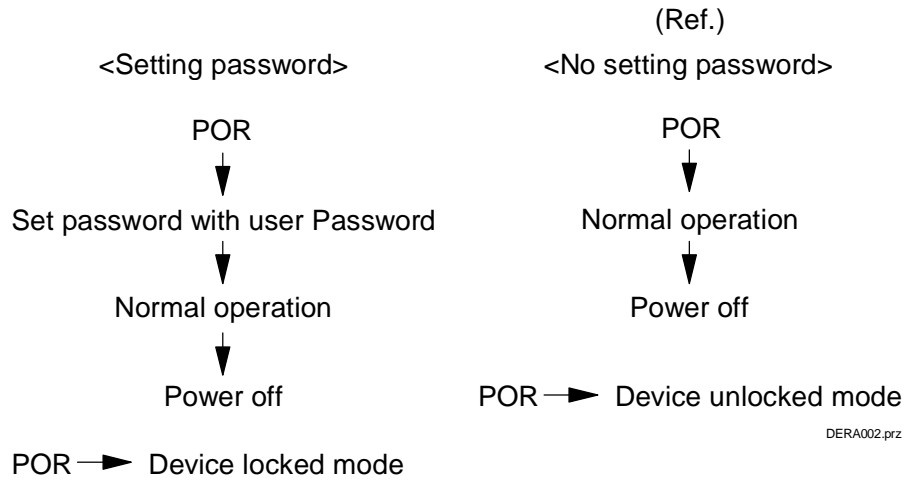
The system manufacturer or dealer can set a new Master Password from default Master Password using the Security Set Password command without enabling the Device Lock Function.

The Master Password Revision Code is set to FFFEh as shipping default by the drive manufacturer.

### 13.8.4.2 User Password setting

When a User Password is set, the device will automatically enter lock mode the next time the device is powered on.

---

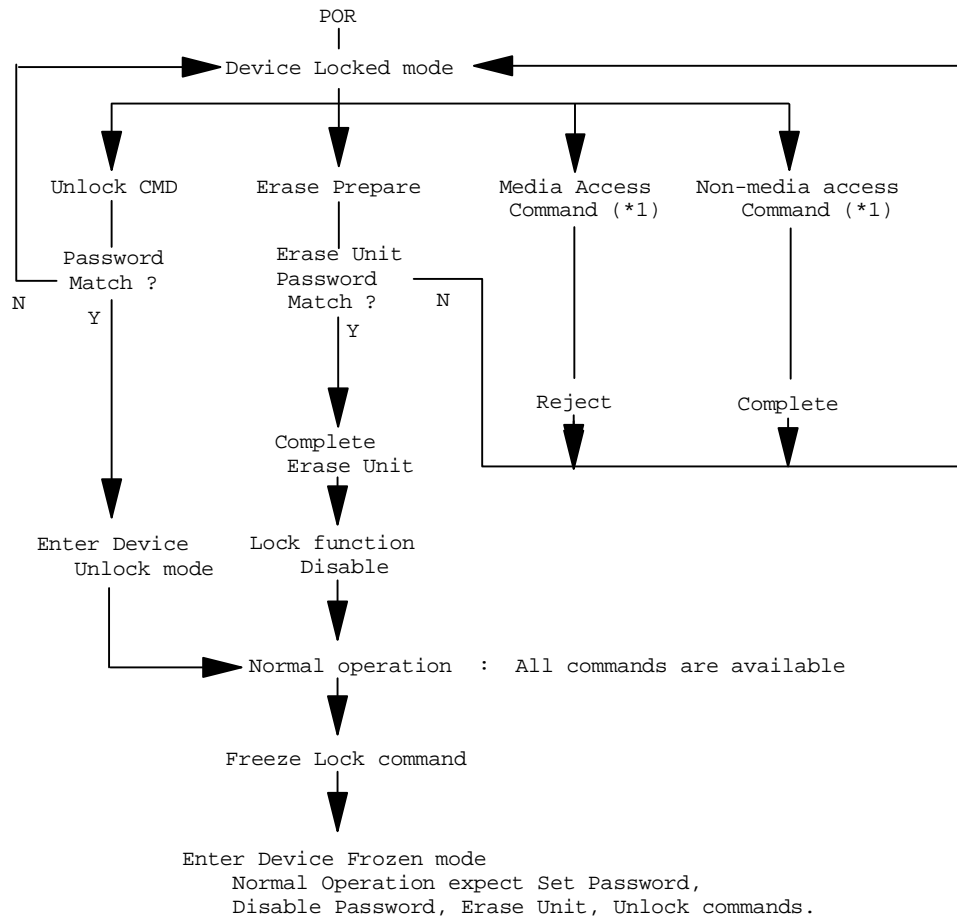


---

Figure 70. Initial Setting

### 13.8.4.3 Operation from POR after User Password is set

When Device Lock Function is enabled, the device rejects media access command until a Security Unlock command is successfully completed.



DERA003.prz

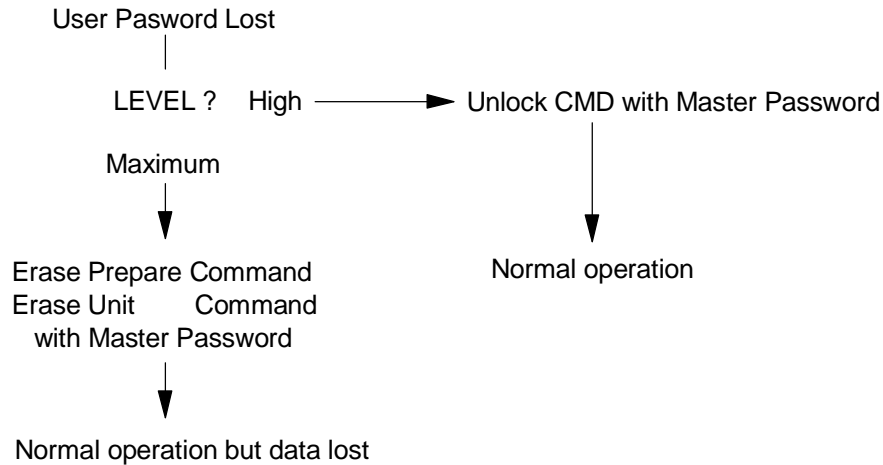
(\*1) refer to Figure 73, "Command table for device lock operation" on page 87.

Figure 71. Usual Operation

#### 13.8.4.4 User Password Lost

If the User Password is forgotten and High level security is set, the system user can not access any data. However the device can be unlocked using the Master Password.

If a system user forgets the User Password and Maximum security level is set, data access is impossible. However the device can be unlocked using the Security Erase Unit command to unlock the device and erase all user data with the Master Password.



DERA003.prz

Figure 72. Password Lost

#### 13.8.4.5 Attempt limit for SECURITY UNLOCK command

The SECURITY UNLOCK command has an attempt limit. The purpose of this attempt limit is to prevent someone from attempting to unlock the drive by using various passwords multiple times.

The device counts the password mismatch. If the password does not match, the device counts it without distinguishing the Master password and the User password. If the count reaches 5, EXPIRE bit (bit 4) of Word 128 in Identify Device information is set and the SECURITY ERASE UNIT command and the SECURITY UNLOCK command are then aborted until a hard reset or a power off. The count and EXPIRE bit are cleared after a power-on reset or a hard reset.

## 13.8.5 Command table

This table shows the response of the device to commands when the Security Mode Feature Set (Device lock function) is enabled.

| Command   | Locked Mode     | Unlocked Mode | Frozen Mode     |
|---|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Check Power Mode  | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| Execute Device Diagnostic                               | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| Flush Cache   | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| Format Track  | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable      |
| Identify Device   | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| Idle  | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| Idle Immediate  | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| Initialize Device Parameters                            | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| NOP   | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| Read Buffer   | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| Read DMA (w/o retry)                                    | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable      |
| Read DMA (w/retry)                                      | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable      |
| Read DMA Queued   | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable      |
| Read Long (w/o retry)                                   | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable      |
| Read Long (w/retry)                                     | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable      |
| Read Multiple   | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable      |
| Read Native Max Address                                 | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| Read Sector(s) (w/o retry)                              | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable      |
| Read Sector(s) (w/retry)                                | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable      |
| Read Verify Sector(s) (w/o retry)                       | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable      |
| Read Verify Sector(s) (w/retry)                         | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable      |
| Recalibrate   | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| Security Disable Password                               | Command aborted | Executable    | Command aborted |
| Security Erase Prepare                                  | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| Security Erase Unit                                     | Executable      | Executable    | Command aborted |
| Security Freeze Lock                                    | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable      |
| Security Set Password                                   | Command aborted | Executable    | Command aborted |
| Security Unlock   | Executable      | Executable    | Command aborted |
| Seek  | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| Service   | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable      |
| Set Features  | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| Set Max Address   | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| Set Multiple Mode                                       | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| Sleep   | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| S.M.A.R.T. Disable Operations                           | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| S.M.A.R.T. Enable/Disable Attribute Autosave            | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| S.M.A.R.T. Enable Operations                            | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| S.M.A.R.T. Execute Off-line Immediate                   | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Values                        | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Thresholds                    | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| S.M.A.R.T. Return Status                                | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| S.M.A.R.T. Save Attribute Values                        | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| S.M.A.R.T. Read Log Sector                              | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| S.M.A.R.T. Write Log Sector                             | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |
| SMART Enable/Disable Automatic Off-line Data Collection | Executable      | Executable    | Executable      |

Figure 73. Command table for device lock operation (1 of 2)

| Command                     | Locked Mode     | Unlocked Mode | Frozen Mode |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|---------------|-------------|
| Standby                     | Executable      | Executable    | Executable  |
| Standby Immediate           | Executable      | Executable    | Executable  |
| Write Buffer                | Executable      | Executable    | Executable  |
| Write DMA (w/o retry)       | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable  |
| Write DMA (w/retry)         | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable  |
| Write DMA Queued            | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable  |
| Write Long (w/o retry)      | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable  |
| Write Long (w/retry)        | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable  |
| Write Multiple              | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable  |
| Write Sector(s) (w/o retry) | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable  |
| Write Sector(s) (w/retry)   | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable  |
| Write Verify                | Command aborted | Executable    | Executable  |

Figure 73. Command table for device lock operation (2 of 2)

## 13.9 Host Protected Area Function

The Host Protected Area Function provides a "protected area" which cannot be accessed using conventional methods. This "protected area" is used to contain critical system data such as BIOS or system management information. The contents of the main memory of the entire system may also be dumped into the "protected area" to resume after system power off.

The LBA/CYL changed by following command affects the Identify Device Information.

The following set of commands are implemented for this function.

**Read Native Max Address** ('F8'h)

**Set Max Address** ('F9'h)

### 13.9.1 Example for operation (in LBA mode)

Assumptions: For better understanding the following example uses actual values such as LBA and size. Since it is just an example, the values may be different.

Device characteristics

|                                    |                            |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Capacity (native)                  | 6,498,680,832 byte (6.4GB) |
| Maximum LBA (native)               | 12,692,735 (C1ACFFh)       |
| Required size for protected area   | 206,438,400 byte           |
| Required blocks for protected area | 403,200 (062700h)          |
| Customer usable device size        | 6,292,242,432 byte (6.2GB) |
| Customer usable sector count       | 12,289,536 (BB8600h)       |
| LBA range for protected area       | BB8600h to C1ACFFh         |

#### 1. Shipping of drives from the manufacturer

Prior to being shipped from the manufacturer each drive has been tested to have a usable capacity of 6.4 GB besides flagged media defects not visible by system.

#### 2. Preparation of drives by the system manufacturer

Special utility software is required to define the size of the protected area and to store the data into it. The sequence is as follows:

- a) Issue a Read Native Max Address command to get the real device maximum LBA. Returned value shows that the native device maximum LBA is 12,692,735 (C1ACFFh) regardless of the current setting.
- b) Make the entire device accessible including the protected area by setting device maximum LBA to 12,692,735 (C1ACFFh) via Set Max Address command. The option may be either nonvolatile or volatile.
- c) Test the sectors for protected area (LBA > = 12,289,536 (BB8600h)) if required.
- d) Write information data such as BIOS code within the protected area.
- e) Change maximum LBA using Set Max Address command to 12,289,535 (BB85FFh) with nonvolatile option.
- f) From this point the protected area cannot be accessed until the next Set Max Address command is issued. Any BIOS, device drivers, or application software access the drive as if it were a 6.2 GB device since the device functions in the same manner as real 6.2 GB device.

### 3. Conventional usage without system software support

Since the drive works as a 6.2 GB device, this device requires no special care for normal use.

### 4. Advanced usage using protected area

The data in the protected area is accessed by the following method:

- a) Issue Read Native Max Address command to get the real device maximum LBA. Returned value shows that native device maximum LBA is 12,692,735 (C1ACFFh) regardless of the current setting.
- b) Make the entire device including the protected area accessible by setting device maximum LBA as 12,692,735 (C1ACFFh) via Set Max Address command with the volatile option. By using this option an unexpected power removal or reset will not make the protected area remain accessible.
- c) Read information data from protected area.
- d) Issue hard reset or POR to inhibit any access to the protected area.

## 13.9.2 Security extensions

1. Set Max Set Password
2. Set Max Lock
3. Set Max Freeze Lock
4. Set Max Unlock

The Set Max Set Password command allows the host to define the password to be used during the current power on cycle. The password does not persist over a power cycle but does persist over a hardware or software reset. This password is not related to the password used for the Security Mode Feature set. When the password is set the device is in the Set\_Max\_Unlocked mode. The Set Max Lock command allows the host to disable the Set Max commands—except set Max Unlock—until the next power cycle or the issuance and acceptance of the Set Max Unlock command. When this command is accepted, the device is in the Set\_Max\_Locked mode. The Set Max Unlock command changes the device from the Set\_Max\_Locked mode to the Set\_Max\_Unlocked mode. The Set Max Freeze Lock command allows the host to disable the Set Max commands—including Set Max UNLOCK—until the next power cycle. When this command is accepted the device is in the Set\_Max\_Frozen mode.

The IDENTIFY DEVICE response word 83, bit 8 indicates that this extension is supported if set, and word 86, bit 8 indicates the Set Max security extension is enabled if set.

## 13.10 Seek Overlap

Each drive model provides an accurate seek time measurement method. The seek command is usually used to measure the device seek time by accumulating the execution time for a number of seek commands. With the typical implementation of the seek command this measurement must include the device and host command overhead. To eliminate this overhead the drive overlaps the seek command as described below.

The first seek command is completed before the actual seek operation is ended. Then the device can receive the next seek command from the host; however, the actual seek operation for the next seek command starts immediately after the actual seek operation for the first seek command is completed. In other words, the execution of two seek commands overlaps excluding the time required for the actual seek operation.

With this overlap the total elapsed time for a number of seek commands results in the total accumulated time for the actual seek operation plus one pre- and post-overhead. When the number of seeks is large, only one overhead may be ignored.

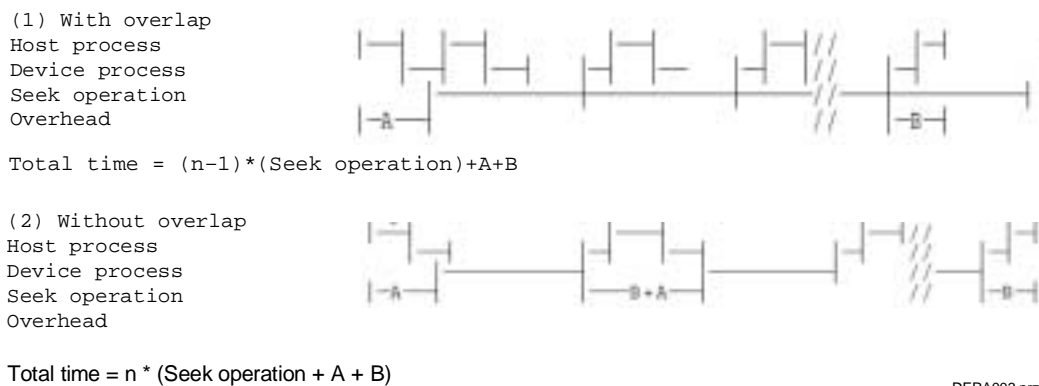


Figure 74. Seek overlap



---

## 13.11 Write cache function

Write cache is a performance enhancement whereby the device reports the completion of the write command—Write Sectors, Write Multiple, and Write DMA—to the host as soon as the device has received all of the data into its buffer. The device assumes the responsibility of subsequently writing the data onto the disk.

- While writing data after completed acknowledgment of a write command, soft reset or hard reset does not affect its operation. However power off terminates the writing operation immediately and unwritten data is lost.
- The Soft reset, Standby (Immediate) command, and Flush Cache commands during the writing of the cached data are executed after the completion of writing to media. So the host system can confirm the completion of write cache operation by issuing a Soft reset, Standby (Immediate) command, or Flush Cache command and then confirming its completion. It is recommended that the host system checks the completion of the write cache operation by issuing Soft reset, the Standby (Immediate) command, or the Flush Cache command to the device before power off.
- The retry bit of Write Sectors is ignored when write cache is enabled.

---

## 13.12 Reassign Function

Reassign Function is used with read commands and write commands. The sectors of data for reassignment are prepared as the spare data sector.

This reassignment information is registered internally and the information is available right after completing the reassign function. Also the information is used on the next power on reset or hard reset.

If the number of the spare sector reaches 0 sector, the reassign function will be disabled automatically.

The spare sectors for reassignment are located at the end of device. As a result of reassignment the physical location of logically sequenced sectors will be dispersed.

---

## 13.13 Auto Reassign Function

The sectors which show some errors may be reallocated automatically when specific conditions are met. The spare sectors for reallocation are located at the end of drive. The conditions for auto-reallocation are described in the following paragraphs.

### 13.13.1 Nonrecovered write errors

When a write operation cannot be completed after the Error Recovery Procedure (ERP) is fully carried out, the sector(s) are reallocated to the spare location. An error is reported to the host system only when the write cache is disabled and the auto reallocation has failed.

If the write cache function is ENABLED—and when the number of available spare sectors reaches 0 sectors—both the auto reassign function and the write cache function are disabled automatically.

### 13.13.2 Nonrecovered read errors

When a read operation is failed after defined ERP is fully carried out, a hard error is reported to the host system. This location is registered internally as a candidate for the reallocation. When a registered location is specified as a target of a write operation, a sequence of media verification is performed automatically. When the result of this verification meets the criteria, this sector is reallocated.

### 13.13.3 Recovered read errors

When a read operation for a sector has failed once and then has recovered at the specific ERP step, this sector of data is reallocated automatically. A media verification sequence may be run prior to the relocation according to the predefined conditions.

---

## 13.14 Power-Up In Standby feature set

The Power-Up In Standby feature set allows devices to be powered-up into the Standby power management state to minimize inrush current at power-up and to allow the host to sequence the spin-up of devices.

This feature set will be enabled/disabled via the SET FEATURES command or use of jumper. When enabled by a jumper, the feature set shall not be disabled via the SET FEATURES command. The enabling of this feature set shall be persistent after power cycle.

A device needs a SET FEATURES subcommand to spin-up to active state when the device has powered up into Standby. The device remains in Standby until the SET FEATURES subcommand is received.

If power-up into Standby is enabled, when an IDENTIFY DEVICE is received while the device is in Standby as a result of powering up into Standby, the device shall set word 0 bit 2 to one to indicate that the response is incomplete, then only words 0 and 2 are correctly reported.

The IDENTIFY DEVICE information indicates the states as follows:

- identify device information is complete or incomplete
  - this feature set is implemented
  - this feature set is enabled or disabled
  - the device needs the Set Features command to spin-up into active state
- 

## 13.15 Advanced Power Management feature set (APM)

This feature allows the host to select an advanced power management level. The advanced power management level is a scale from the lowest power consumption setting of 01h to the maximum performance level of FEh. Device performance may increase with increasing advanced power management levels. Device power consumption may increase with increasing advanced power management levels. The advanced power management levels contain discrete bands described in the section on Set Feature command in detail. This feature set uses the following functions:

1. A SET FEATURES subcommand to enable Advanced Power Management.
2. A SET FEATURES subcommand to disable Advanced Power Management.

Advanced Power Management, Automatic Acoustic Management, and the Standby timer setting are independent functions. The device shall enter Standby mode if any of the following are true:

1. The Standby timer has been set and times out.
2. Automatic Power Management is enabled, and the associated algorithm indicates that the Standby mode should be entered to save power.
3. Automatic Acoustic Management is enabled, and the associated algorithm indicates that the Standby mode should be entered to reduce acoustical emanations.

The IDENTIFY DEVICE response word 83, bit 3 indicates that Advanced Power Management feature is supported if set. Word 86, bit 3 indicates that Advanced Power Management is enabled if set. Word 91, bits 7–0 contains the current Advanced Power Management level if it is enabled.

---

## 13.16 Automatic Acoustic Management feature set (AAM)

This feature set allows the host to select an acoustic management level. The acoustic management level may range from the lowest acoustic emanation setting of 01h to the maximum performance level of FEh. Device performance and acoustic emanation may increase with increasing acoustic management levels. The acoustic management levels may contain discrete bands. Automatic Acoustic Management levels 80h and higher do not permit the device to enter Standby mode as a result of the Automatic Acoustic Management algorithm. The Automatic Acoustic Management feature set uses the following functions:

1. A SET FEATURES subcommand to enable Automatic Acoustic Management
2. A SET FEATURES subcommand to disable Automatic Acoustic Management

Advanced Power Management, Automatic Acoustic Management, and the Standby timer setting are independent functions. The device shall enter Standby mode if any of the following are true:

1. The Standby timer has been set and times out.
2. Automatic Power Management is enabled and the associated algorithm indicates that the Standby mode should be entered to save power.
3. Automatic Acoustic Management is enabled and the associated algorithm indicates that the Standby mode be entered to reduce acoustical emanations.

The IDENTIFY DEVICE response word 83, bit 9 indicates that Automatic Acoustic Management feature is supported if set. Word 86, bit 9 indicates that Automatic Acoustic Management is enabled if set. Word 94, bits 7–0 contain the current Automatic Acoustic Management level if Automatic Acoustic Management is enabled, and bits 8–15 contain the Vendor's recommended AAM level.

---

## 13.17 Address Offset Feature

Computer systems perform initial code loading (booting) by reading from a predefined address on a drive. To allow an alternate bootable operating system to exist in a system reserved area on a drive, this feature provides a Set Features function to temporarily offset the drive address space. The offset address space wraps around so that the entire drive address space remains addressable in offset mode. The Max LBA in offset mode is set to the end of the system reserved area to protect the data in the user area when operating in offset mode. The Max LBA can be changed by an Set Max Address command to access the user area. If the native MAX LBA is set, the whole user area can be accessed. But any commands which access sectors across the original native maximum LBA are rejected with error, even if this protection is removed by an Set Max Address command.

### 13.17.1 Enable/Disable Address Offset Mode

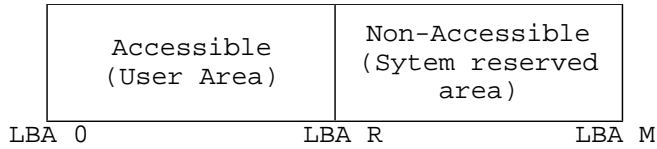
The Set Features subcommand code 09h Enable Address Offset Mode offsets address Cylinder 0, Head 0, Sector 1, LBA 0, to the start of the nonvolatile protected area established using the Set Max Address command. The offset condition is cleared by Subcommand 89h Disable Address Offset Mode, Hardware reset, or Power on Reset. If Reverting to Power on Defaults has been enabled by Set Features command, it is cleared by Soft reset as well. Upon entering offset mode the capacity of the drive returned in the Identify Device data is the size of the former protected area. A subsequent Set Max Address command with the address returned by Read Max Address command allows access to the entire drive. Addresses wrap so the entire drive remains addressable.

If a nonvolatile protected area has not been established before the device receives a Set Features Enable Address Offset Mode command, the command fails with Abort error status.

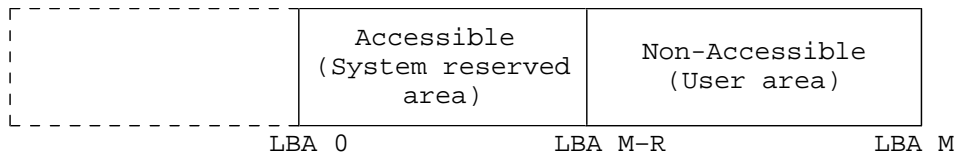
Disable Address Offset Feature removes the address offset and sets the size of the drive reported by the Identify Device command back to the size specified in the last nonvolatile Set Max Address command.

*Before Enable Address Offset Mode*

A reserved area has been created using a non-volatile Set Max command.



*After Enable Address Offset Mode*



*After Set Max Address Command using the Value Returned by Read Max Address*

Any commands which access sectors across the LBA M-R are aborted with error.

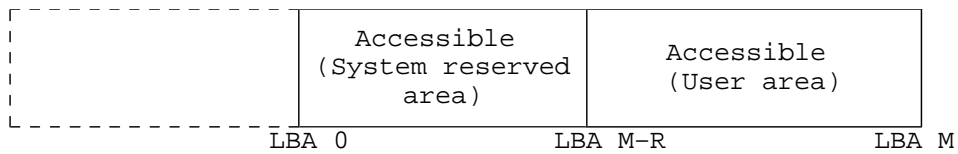


Figure 75. Device address map before and after Set Feature

### 13.17.2 Identify Device Data

Identify Device data word 83 bit 7 indicates the device supports the Address Offset Feature.

Identify Device data word 86 bit 7 indicates the device is in Address Offset mode.

### 13.17.3 Exceptions in Address Offset Mode

Any commands which access sectors across the original native maximum LBA are rejected with error even if the access protection is removed by an Set Max Address command.

The Read Look Ahead operation is not carried out even when enabled by Set Feature command.

---

## 14.0 Command Protocol

The commands are grouped into different classes according to the protocols followed for command execution. The command classes with their associated protocols are defined below.

For all commands, the host must first check if BSY=1, and should proceed no further unless and until BSY=0. For all commands, the host must also wait for RDY=1 before proceeding.

A device must maintain either BSY=1 or DRQ=1 at all times until the command is completed. The INTRQ signal is used by the device to signal most, but not all, times when the BSY bit is changed from one to zero during command execution.

A command shall only be interrupted with a hardware or software reset. The result of writing to the Command register while BSY=1 or DRQ=1 is unpredictable and may result in data corruption. A command should only be interrupted by a reset at times when the host thinks there may be a problem—such as a device that is no longer responding.

Interrupts are cleared when the host reads the Status Register, issues a reset, or writes to the Command Register.

---

### 14.1 PIO Data In commands

These commands are:

- Identify Device
- Read Buffer
- Read Long
- Read Multiple
- Read Sectors
- S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Values
- S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Thresholds
- S.M.A.R.T. Read Log Sector

Execution includes the transfer of one or more 512 byte (>512 bytes on Read Long) sectors of data from the device to the host.

1. The host writes any required parameters to the Features, Sector Count, Sector Number, Cylinder, and Device/Head Registers.
2. The host writes the command code to the Command Register.
3. For each sector—or block—of data to be transferred
  - a. The device sets BSY=1 and prepares for data transfer.
  - b. When a sector—or block—of data is available for transfer to the host, the device sets BSY=0, sets DRQ=1, and interrupts the host.
  - c. In response to the interrupt the host reads the Status Register.
  - d. The device clears the interrupt in response to the Status Register being read.
  - e. The host reads one sector—or block—of data via the Data Register.
  - f. The device sets DRQ=0 after the sector—or block—has been transferred to the host.

4. For the Read Long command:
  - a. The device sets BSY=1 and prepares for data transfer.
  - b. When the sector of data is available for transfer to the host, the device sets BSY=0, sets DRQ=1, and interrupts the host.
  - c. In response to the interrupt the host reads the Status Register.
  - d. The device clears the interrupt in response to the Status Register being read.
  - e. The host reads the sector of data including ECC bytes via the Data Register.
  - f. The device sets DRQ=0 after the sector has been transferred to the host.

The Read Multiple command transfers one block of data for each interrupt. The other commands transfer one sector of data for each interrupt.

Note that the status data for a sector of data is available in the Status Register before the sector is transferred to the host.

If the device detects an invalid parameter, then it will abort the command by setting BSY=0, ERR=1, ABT=1, and interrupting the host.

If an error occurs, the device will set BSY=0, ERR=1, and DRQ=1. The device will then store the error status in the Error Register and interrupt the host. The registers will contain the location of the sector in error. The errored location will be reported with CHS mode or LBA mode; the mode is decided by mode select bit (bit 6) of Device/Head register on issuing the command.

If an Uncorrectable Data Error (UNC=1) occurs, the defective data will be transferred from the media to the sector buffer and will be available to be transferred to the host at the option of the host. In case of a Read Multiple command the host should complete transfer of the block which includes error from the sector buffer and terminate whatever kind of type of error occurred.

If an error occurs that is correctable by retries, the data will be corrected and the transfer will continue normally. There will be no indication to the host that any retry occurred.

All data transfers to the host through the Data Register are 16 bits, except for the ECC bytes, which are 8 bits.

---

## 14.2 PIO Data Out commands

These commands are:

- Format Track
- Security Disable Password
- Security Erase Unit
- Security Set Password
- Security Unlock
- Set Max Set Password command
- Set Max Unlock command
- SMART Write Log Sector
- Write Buffer
- Write Long
- Write Multiple
- Write Sectors

Execution includes the transfer of one or more 512 byte (>512 bytes on Write Long) sectors of data from the host to the device.

1. The host writes any required parameters to the Features, Sector Count, Sector Number, Cylinder, and Device/Head Registers.
2. The host writes the command code to the Command Register.
3. The device sets BSY=1.
4. For each sector (or block) of data to be transferred:
  - a. The device sets BSY=0 and DRQ=1 when it is ready to receive a sector (or block).
  - b. The host writes one sector (or block) of data via the Data Register.
  - c. The device sets BSY=1 after it has received the sector (or block).
  - d. When the device has finished processing the sector (or block), it sets BSY=0 and interrupts the host.
  - e. In response to the interrupt, the host reads the Status Register.
  - f. The device clears the interrupt in response to the Status Register being read.
5. For the Write Long command:
  - a. The device sets BSY=0 and DRQ=1 when it is ready to receive a sector.
  - b. The host writes one sector of data including ECC bytes via the Data Register.
  - c. The device sets BSY=1 after it has received the sector.
  - d. After processing the sector of data the device sets BSY=0 and interrupts the host.
  - e. In response to the interrupt, the host reads the Status Register.
  - f. The device clears the interrupt in response to the Status Register being read.

The Write Multiple command transfers one block of data for each interrupt. The other commands transfer one sector of data for each interrupt.

If the device detects an invalid parameter, it will abort the command by setting BSY=0, ERR=1, ABT=1, and interrupting the host.

If an uncorrectable error occurs, the device will set BSY=0 and ERR=1, store the error status in the Error Register, and interrupt the host. The registers will contain the location of the sector in error. The errored location will be reported with CHS mode or LBA mode; the mode is decided by mode select bit (bit 6) of Device/Head register on issuing the command.

All data transfers to the device through the Data Register are 16 bits, except for the ECC bytes which are 8 bits.

---

## 14.3 Non-data commands

These commands are:

- Check Power Mode
- Execute Device Diagnostic
- Flush Cache
- Idle
- Idle Immediate
- Initialize Device Parameters
- NOP
- Read Native Max Address
- Read Verify Sectors
- Recalibrate
- Security Erase Prepare
- Security Freeze Lock
- Seek
- Set Features
- Set Max Address
- Set Max Lock command
- Set Max Freeze Lock command
- Set Multiple Mode
- Sleep
- S.M.A.R.T. Disable Operations
- S.M.A.R.T. Enable/Disable Attribute Autosave
- S.M.A.R.T. Enable Operations
- S.M.A.R.T. Execute Off-line Data Collection
- S.M.A.R.T. Return Status
- S.M.A.R.T. Save Attribute Values
- S.M.A.R.T. Enable/Disable Automatic Off Line Data Collection
- Standby
- Standby Immediate

Execution of these commands involves no data transfer.

1. The host writes any required parameters to the Features, Sector Count, Sector Number, Cylinder, and Device/Head Registers.
2. The host writes the command code to the Command Register.
3. The device sets BSY=1.
4. When the device has finished processing the command, it sets BSY=0, and interrupts the host.
5. In response to the interrupt, the host reads the Status Register.
6. The device clears the interrupt in response to the Status Register being read.



---

## 14.4 DMA commands

DMA commands are:

- Read DMA
- Write DMA

Data transfers using DMA commands differ in two ways from PIO transfers:

- data transfers are performed using the slave DMA channel
- no intermediate sector interrupts are issued on multisector commands

Initiation of the DMA transfer commands is identical to the Read Sector or Write Sector commands except that the host initializes the slave-DMA channel prior to issuing the command.

The interrupt handler for DMA transfers is different for the following reasons:

- no intermediate sector interrupts are issued on multisector commands
- the host resets the DMA channel prior to reading status from the device

The DMA protocol allows high performance multitasking operating systems to eliminate processor overhead associated with PIO transfers.

1. Host initializes the slave DMA channel
2. Host writes any required parameters to the Features, Sector Count, Sector Number, Cylinder and Device/Head registers.
3. Host writes command code to the Command Register
4. The device sets DMARQ when it is ready to transfer any part of the data.
5. Host transfers the data using the DMA transfer protocol currently in effect.
6. When all of the data has been transferred, the device generates an interrupt to the host.
7. Host resets the slave DMA channel.

Host reads the Status Register and, optionally, the Error Register.

---

## 14.5 DMA queued commands

These commands are:

- Read DMA Queued
- Service
- Write DMA Queued

### 1. Command Issue

- a. The host writes any required parameters to the Features, Sector Count, Sector Number, Cylinder, and Device/Head registers.
- b. The host writes command code to the Command Register.
- c. The device sets BSY.
- d. The device clears or sets REL.

e. The device clears BSY.

## 2. Data Transfer and Command Completion

If the device is ready for data transfer (REL is cleared)

- a. The host transfers the data for the command identified by the Tag number using the DMA transfer protocol currently in effect.
- b. When all of the data has been transferred, the device generates an interrupt to the host.
- c. The host may issue another command or wait for service request from the device.

## 3. Bus Release

If the device is not ready for data transfer (REL is set)

- a. the device generates an interrupt if release interrupt is enabled.
- b. the host may issue another command or wait for service request from the device.

## 15.0 Command descriptions

| Protocol | Command                                      | Code (Hex) | Binary Code Bit<br>7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 |
|----------|--|------------|------------------------------------|
| 3        | Check Power Mode                             | E5         | 1 1 1 0 0 1 0 1                    |
| 3        | Check Power Mode*                            | 98         | 1 0 0 1 1 0 0 0                    |
| 3        | Execute Device Diagnostic                    | 90         | 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 0                    |
| 3        | Flush Cache                                  | E7         | 1 1 1 0 0 1 1 1                    |
| 2        | Format Track                                 | 50         | 0 1 0 1 0 0 0 0                    |
| 1        | Identify Device                              | EC         | 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 0                    |
| 3        | Idle   | E3         | 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 1                    |
| 3        | Idle*  | 97         | 1 0 0 1 0 1 1 1                    |
| 3        | Idle Immediate                               | E1         | 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 1                    |
| 3        | Idle Immediate*                              | 95         | 1 0 0 1 0 1 0 1                    |
| 3        | Initialize Device Parameters                 | 91         | 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 1                    |
| 3        | NOP  | 00         | 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0                    |
| 1        | Read Buffer                                  | E4         | 1 1 1 0 0 1 0 0                    |
| 4        | Read DMA (retry)                             | C8         | 1 1 0 0 1 0 0 0                    |
| 4        | Read DMA (no retry)                          | C9         | 1 1 0 0 1 0 0 1                    |
| 5        | Read DMA Queued                              | C7         | 1 1 0 0 0 1 1 1                    |
| 1        | Read Long (retry)                            | 22         | 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 0                    |
| 1        | Read Long (no retry)                         | 23         | 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 1                    |
| 1        | Read Multiple                                | C4         | 1 1 0 0 0 1 0 0                    |
| 3        | Read Native Max Address                      | F8         | 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 0                    |
| 1        | Read Sectors (retry)                         | 20         | 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 0                    |
| 1        | Read Sectors (no retry)                      | 21         | 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 1                    |
| 3        | Read Verify Sectors (retry)                  | 40         | 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 0                    |
| 3        | Read Verify Sectors (no retry)               | 41         | 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 1                    |
| 3        | Recalibrate                                  | 1x         | 0 0 0 1 - - - -                    |
| 2        | Security Disable Password                    | F6         | 1 1 1 1 1 0 1 0                    |
| 3        | Security Erase Prepare                       | F3         | 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 1                    |
| 2        | Security Erase Unit                          | F4         | 1 1 1 1 0 1 0 0                    |
| 3        | Security Freeze Lock                         | F5         | 1 1 1 1 0 1 0 1                    |
| 2        | Security Set Password                        | F1         | 1 1 1 1 0 0 0 1                    |
| 2        | Security Unlock                              | F2         | 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 0                    |
| 3        | Seek   | 7x         | 0 1 1 1 - - - -                    |
| 5        | Service                                      | A2         | 1 0 1 0 0 0 1 0                    |
| 3        | Set Features                                 | EF         | 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1                    |
| 3        | Set Max Address                              | F9         | 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 1                    |
| 3        | Set Multiple Mode                            | C6         | 1 1 0 0 0 1 1 0                    |
| 3        | Sleep  | E6         | 1 1 1 0 0 1 1 0                    |
| 3        | Sleep*                                       | 99         | 1 0 0 1 1 0 0 1                    |
| 3        | S.M.A.R.T. Disable Operations                | B0         | 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0                    |
| 3        | S.M.A.R.T. Enable/Disable Attribute Autosave | B0         | 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0                    |
| 3        | S.M.A.R.T. Enable Operations                 | B0         | 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0                    |

Commands marked \* are alternate command codes for previously defined commands.

Figure 76. Command set (1 of 2)

| Protocol | Command  | Code (Hex) | Binary Code Bit<br>7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 |
|----------|--|------------|------------------------------------|
| 3        | S.M.A.R.T. Execute Off-line Data Collection                  | B0         | 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0                    |
| 1        | S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Values                             | B0         | 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0                    |
| 1        | S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Thresholds                         | B0         | 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0                    |
| 3        | S.M.A.R.T. Return Status                                     | B0         | 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0                    |
| 3        | S.M.A.R.T. Save Attribute Values                             | B0         | 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0                    |
| 1        | S.M.A.R.T. Read Log Sector                                   | B0         | 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0                    |
| 2        | S.M.A.R.T. Write Log Sector                                  | B0         | 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0                    |
| 3        | S.M.A.R.T. Enable/Disable Automatic Off-line Data Collection | B0         | 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0                    |
| 3        | Standby  | E2         | 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 0                    |
| 3        | Standby*   | 96         | 1 0 0 1 0 1 1 0                    |
| 3        | Standby Immediate  | E0         | 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 0                    |
| 3        | Standby Immediate*   | 94         | 1 0 0 1 0 1 0 0                    |
| 2        | Write Buffer   | E8         | 1 1 1 0 1 0 0 0                    |
| 4        | Write DMA (retry)  | CA         | 1 1 0 0 1 0 1 0                    |
| 4        | Write DMA (no retry)   | CB         | 1 1 0 0 1 0 1 1                    |
| 5        | Write DMA Queued   | CC         | 1 1 0 0 1 1 0 0                    |
| 2        | Write Long (retry)   | 32         | 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 0                    |
| 2        | Write Long (no retry)  | 33         | 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 1                    |
| 2        | Write Multiple   | C5         | 1 1 0 0 0 1 0 1                    |
| 2        | Write Sectors (retry)  | 30         | 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 0                    |
| 2        | Write Sectors (no retry)                                     | 31         | 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1                    |

Protocol :

- 1 : PIO data IN command
- 2 : PIO data OUT command
- 3 : Non data command
- 4 : DMA command
- 5 : DMA queued command
- + : Vendor specific command

Commands marked \* are alternate command codes for previously defined commands.

Figure 76. Command set (2 of 2)

| Command (Subcommand)                         | Command Code (Hex) | Feature Register (Hex) |
|--|--------------------|------------------------|
| S.M.A.R.T. Function                          |                    |                        |
| S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Values             | B0                 | D0                     |
| S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Thresholds         | B0                 | D1                     |
| S.M.A.R.T. Enable/Disable Attribute Autosave | B0                 | D2                     |
| S.M.A.R.T. Save Attribute Values             | B0                 | D3                     |
| S.M.A.R.T. Execute Off-line Data Collection  | B0                 | D4                     |
| S.M.A.R.T. Read Log                          | B0                 | D5                     |
| S.M.A.R.T. Write Log                         | B0                 | D6                     |
| S.M.A.R.T. Enable Operations                 | B0                 | D8                     |
| S.M.A.R.T. Disable Operations                | B0                 | D9                     |
| S.M.A.R.T. Return Status                     | B0                 | DA                     |
| S.M.A.R.T. Enable/Disable Automatic Off-line | B0                 | DB                     |
| Set Features                                 |                    |                        |
| Enable Write Cache                           | EF                 | 02                     |
| Set Transfer Mode                            | EF                 | 03                     |
| 40 bytes of ECC apply on Read/Write Long     | EF                 | 44                     |
| Disable read look-ahead feature              | EF                 | 55                     |
| Enable release interrupt                     | EF                 | 5D                     |
| Disable reverting to power on defaults       | EF                 | 66                     |
| Disable write cache                          | EF                 | 82                     |
| Enable read look-ahead feature               | EF                 | AA                     |
| 4 bytes of ECC apply on Read/Write Long      | EF                 | BB                     |
| Enable reverting to power on defaults        | EF                 | CC                     |
| Disable release interrupt                    | EF                 | DD                     |

Figure 77. Command set—Subcommand

Figure 76 on pages 101 and 102 shows the commands that are supported by the device. The preceding figure shows the subcommands that are supported by each command or feature.

The following symbols are used in the command descriptions:

### Output Registers

- 0** Indicates that the bit must be set to zero.
- 1** Indicates that the bit must be set to one.
- D** The device number bit. Indicates that the device number bit of the Device/Head Register should be specified. Zero selects the master device and one selects the slave device.
- H** Head number. Indicates that the head number part of the Device/Head Register is an output parameter and should be specified.
- L** LBA mode. Indicates the addressing mode. Zero specifies CHS mode and one does LBA addressing mode.
- R** Retry. Indicates that the Retry bit of the Command Register should be specified.
- B** Option Bit. Indicates that the Option Bit of the Sector Count Register should be specified. (This bit is used by Set Max Address command)
- V** Valid. Indicates that the bit is part of an output parameter and should be specified.

- x** Indicates that the hex character is not used.
- Indicates that the bit is not used.

### **Input Registers**

- 0** Indicates that the bit is always set to zero.
- 1** Indicates that the bit is always set to one.
- H** Head number. Indicates that the head number part of the Device/Head Register is an input parameter and will be set by the device.
- V** Valid. Indicates that the bit is part of an input parameter and will be set to zero or one by the device.
- Indicates that the bit is not part of an input parameter.

The command descriptions show the contents of the Status and Error Registers after the device has completed processing the command and has interrupted the host.

## 15.1 Check Power Mode (E5h/98h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 78. Check Power Mode Command (E5h/98h)

The Check Power Mode command reports whether the device is spun up and the media is available for immediate access.

### Input parameters from the device

**Sector** The power mode code. The command returns FFh in the Sector Count Register if the spindle motor is at speed and the drive is not in Standby or Sleep mode. Otherwise, the Sector Count Register will be set to zero.

## 15.2 Execute Device Diagnostic (90h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | - | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| V              | V   | V | V   | V | V   | V   | V   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | 0   |

Figure 79. Execute Device Diagnostic Command (90h)

The Execute Device Diagnostic command performs the internal diagnostic tests implemented by the device. The results of the test are stored in the Error Register.

The normal Error Register bit definitions do not apply to this command. Instead, the register contains a diagnostic code. See Figure 67 on page 76 for the definitions.



## 15.3 Flush Cache (E7h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 80. Flush Cache Command (E7h)

This command causes the device to complete writing data from its cache.

The device returns good status after data in the write cache is written to disk media.

## 15.4 Format Track (50h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Number | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder Low                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder Low  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder High                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder High | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | L | 1 | D | H | H | H | H                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | H | H | H | H |
| Command                        | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | V   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | V  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 81. Format Track Command (50h)

The Format Track command formats a single logical track on the device. Each good sector of data on the track will be initialized to zero with a write operation. At this time the sector of data is not verified with read operation whether the sector of data is initialized correctly. Any data previously stored on the track will be lost.

The host may transfer a sector of data containing a format table to the device. But the device ignores the format table and writes zero to all sectors on the track regardless of the descriptors.

Since device performance is optimal at 1:1 interleave and the device uses relative block addressing internally, the device will always format a track in the same way no matter what sector numbering is specified in the format table.

### Output parameters to the device

**Sector Number** In LBA mode this register specifies LBA address bits 0–7 to be formatted. (L=1)

**Cylinder High/Low** The cylinder number of the track to be formatted. (L=0)

In LBA mode this register specifies LBA address bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High) to be formatted. (L=1)

**H** The head number of the track to be formatted. (L=0)

In LBA mode this register specifies LBA address bits 24–27 to be formatted. (L=1)

### Input parameters from the device

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>Sector Number</b>     | In LBA mode this register specifies current LBA address bits 0–7. (L=1)               |
| <b>Cylinder High/Low</b> | In LBA mode this register specifies current LBA address bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High) |
| <b>H</b>                 | In LBA mode this register specifies current LBA address bits 24–27. (L=1)             |
| <b>Error</b>             | The Error Register. An Abort error (ABT=1) will be returned when LBA is out of range. |

In LBA mode this command formats a single logical track including the specified LBA.

## 15.5 Format Unit (F7h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | L | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | V   | 0 | V   | 0 | V   | 0   | V   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | V  | V   | 0   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 82. Format Unit Command (F7h)

The Format Unit command initializes all user data sectors after merging reassigned sector location into the defect information of the device and clearing the reassign information. Both new reassign information and new defect information are available right after command completion of this command. Previous information of reassign and defect are erased from the device by executing this command.

Note that the Format Unit command initializes from LBA 0 to Native MAX LBA regardless of the setting by the Initialize Device Parameter (91h) command or the Set Max Address (F9h) command, so that the protected area defined by these commands is also initialized.

Security Erase Prepare (F3h) command should be completed just prior to the Format Unit command. If the device receives a Format Unit command without a prior Security Erase Prepare command the device aborts the Format Unit command.

All values in Feature register are reserved and any values other than 11h should not be put into Feature register.

This command does not request a data transfer.

Command execution time depends on drive capacity. To determine command time-out value, Word 89 of Identify Device data should be referred.

## 15.6 Identify Device (ECh)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                               | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 83. Identify Device Command (ECh)

The Identify Device command requests the device to transfer configuration information to the host. The device will transfer a sector to the host containing the information described in the following figure.

In the following table the bullet symbol (•) means the word is for vendor specific use.

| Word  | Content              | Description  |
|-------|----------------------|--|
| 00    | 045AH<br>or<br>045EH | Drive classification, bit assignments:<br>15(=0): 1=ATAPI device, 0=ATA device<br>14- 8 : retired<br>7(=0): 1=removable cartridge drive<br>6(=1): 1=fixed drive<br>5- 3 : retired<br>2(=0): Response incomplete<br>1 : retired<br>0(=0): Reserved  |
| 01    | xxxxH                | Number of cylinders in default translate mode  |
| 02    | 37C8H                | Specific Configuration<br>37C8H: Need Set Feature for spin-up after power-up<br>Identify Device is incomplete  |
| 03    | 00xxH                | Number of heads in default translate mode  |
| 04    | 0                    | • Reserved   |
| 05    | 0                    | • Reserved   |
| 06    | 003FH                | Number of sectors per track in default translate mode  |
| 07    | 0000H                | • Number of bytes of sector gap  |
| 08    | 0000H                | • Number of bytes in sync field  |
| 09    | 0000H                | • Reserved   |
| 10-19 | XXXX                 | Serial number in ASCII (0 = not specified)   |
| 20    | 0003H                | • Controller type:<br>0003: dual ported, multiple sector buffer with look-ahead read   |
| 21    | XXXXH                | • Buffer size in 512-byte increments   |
| 22    | 0028H                | • Number of ECC bytes<br>(Vendor unique length selected via set feature cmd)   |
| 23-26 | XXXX                 | Microcode version in ASCII   |
| 27-46 | XXXX                 | Model number in ASCII  |
| 47    | 8010H                | 15-8 80h<br>7-0 Maximum number of sectors that can be transferred per interrupt on Read and Write Multiple commands  |
| 48    | 0000H                | Reserved   |
| 49    | xF00H                | Capabilities, bit assignments:<br>15-14 (=0) Reserved<br>13<br>(=1) Standby timer<br>values as specified in ATA standard are supported<br>(=0) values are vendor specific<br>12 (=0) Reserved<br>11 (=1) IORDY supported<br>10 (=1) IORDY can be disabled<br>9 (=1) Reserved<br>8 (=0) Reserved<br>• 7-0 (=0) Reserved |

Figure 84. Identify Device Information (1 of 6)

| Word  | Content | Description  |
|-------|---------|--|
| 50    | 400xH   | Capabilities, bit assignments:<br>15-14(=01) Word 50 is valid<br>13- 1(=0) Reserved<br>0 Minimum value of Standby timer<br>(=0) less than 5 minutes<br>(=1) equal to or greater than 5 minutes |
| 51    | 0200H   | PIO data transfer cycle timing mode  |
| 52    | 0200H   | • DMA data transfer cycle timing mode<br>Refer Word 62 and 63  |
| 53    | 0007H   | Validity flag of the word<br>15-3(=0) Reserved<br>2(=1) 1=Word 88 are Valid<br>1(=1) 1=Word 64-70 are Valid<br>0(=1) 1=Word 54-58 are Valid  |
| 54    | xxxxH   | Number of current cylinders  |
| 55    | xxxxH   | Number of current heads  |
| 56    | xxxxH   | Number of current sectors per track  |
| 57-58 | xxxxH   | Current capacity in sectors<br>Word 57 specifies the low word of the capacity  |
| 59    | 0xxxH   | Current Multiple setting. Bit assignments:<br>15-9 (=0) Reserved<br>8 1= Multiple Sector Setting is Valid<br>7-0 xxh = Current setting for number of sectors                                   |
| 60-61 | xxxxH   | Total Number of User Addressable Sectors<br>Word 60 specifies the low word of the number   |
| 62    | 0000H   |  |
| 63    | xx07H   | Multiword DMA Transfer Capability<br>15-8 Multiword DMA transfer mode active<br>7-0 (=7) Multiword DMA transfer modes supported<br>(support mode 0, 1, and 2)                                  |
| 64    | 0003H   | Flow Control PIO Transfer Modes Supported<br>15-8 (=0) Reserved<br>7-0 (=3) Advanced PIO Transfer Modes Supported<br>'11' = PIO Mode 3 and 4 Supported   |
| 65    | 0078H   | Minimum Multiword DMA Transfer Cycle Time Per Word<br>15-0 (=78)Cycle time in nanoseconds (120 ns, 16.6MB/s)   |
| 66    | 0078H   | Manufacturer's Recommended Multiword DMA Transfer<br>Cycle Time<br>15-0(=78)Cycle time in nanoseconds (120 ns, 16.6 MB/s)  |
| 67    | 00F0H   | Minimum PIO Transfer Cycle Time Without Flow Control<br>15-0(=F0)Cycle time in nanoseconds (240 ns, 8.3 MB/s)  |
| 68    | 0078H   | Minimum PIO Transfer Cycle Time Without Flow Control<br>15-0(=78)Cycle time in nanoseconds (120 ns, 16.6 MB/s)   |
| 69-74 | 0000H   | Reserved   |

Figure 84. Identify Device Information (2 of 6)

| Word  | Content | Description   |
|-------|---------|---|
| 75    | 00xxH   | Queue depth<br>15- 5 Reserved<br>4- 0 Maximum queue depth   |
| 76-79 | 0000H   | Reserved  |
| 80    | 003CH   | Major version number<br>15- 0 (=3C)ATA-2, ATA-3, ATA/ATAPI-4 and ATA/ATAPI-5  |
| 81    | 0015H   | Minor version number<br>15- 0 (=15)ATA/ATAPI-5 X3T13 1321D  |
| 82    | 74EBH   | Command set supported<br>15(=0) Reserved<br>14(=1) NOP command<br>13(=1) READ BUFFER command<br>12(=1) WRITE BUFFER command<br>11(=0) Reserved<br>10(=1) Host Protected Area feature set<br>9(=0) DEVICE RESET command<br>8(=0) SERVICE interrupt<br>7(=1) RELEASE interrupt<br>6(=1) LOOK AHEAD<br>5(=1) WRITE CACHE<br>4(=0) PACKET Command feature set<br>3(=1) Power management feature set<br>2(=0) Removable feature set<br>1(=1) Security feature set<br>0(=1) S.M.A.R.T. feature set                                      |
| 83    | 43EAH   | Command set supported<br>15-14(=01) Word 83 is valid<br>13-10 (=0) Reserved<br>9 (=1) Automatic Acoustic Management<br>8 (=1) Set Max Security extension<br>7 (=1) Set Features Address Offset mode<br>6 (=1) SET FEATURES subcommand required to spin-up after power-up<br>5 (=1) Power-Up In Standby feature set supported<br>4 (=0) Removable Media Status Notification feature<br>3 (=1) Advanced Power management feature set<br>2 (=0) CFA feature set<br>1 (=1) READ/WRITE DMA QUEUED<br>0 (=0) DOWNLOAD MICROCODE command |
| 84    | 4000H   | Command set/feature supported extension<br>15-14(=01) Word 84 is valid<br>13- 0 (=0) Reserved   |

Figure 84. Identify Device Information (3 of 6)



| Word | Content | Description  |
|------|---------|--|
| 85   | xxxxH   | Command set/feature enabled<br>15 Reserved<br>14 NOP command<br>13 READ BUFFER command<br>12 WRITE BUFFER command<br>11 Reserved<br>10 Host Protected Area feature set<br>9 DEVICE RESET command<br>8 SERVICE interrupt<br>7 RELEASE interrupt<br>6 LOOK AHEAD<br>5 WRITE CACHE<br>4 PACKET Command feature set<br>3 Power management feature set<br>2 Removable feature set<br>1 Security feature set<br>0 S.M.A.R.T. feature set   |
| 86   | xxxxH   | Command set/feature enabled<br>15-10 Reserved<br>9 Automatic Acoustic Management enabled<br>8 Set Max Security extensions enabled<br>7 Set Features Address Offset mode<br>6 Set Features subcommand required to spin-up after power-up<br>5 Power-Up In Standby feature set enabled<br>4 Removable Media Status Notification feature<br>3 Advanced Power management feature set<br>2 CFA feature set<br>1 READ/WRITE DMA QUEUED<br>0 DOWNLOAD MICROCODE command   |
| 87   | 4000H   | Command set/feature default<br>15-14 (=01) Word 87 is valid<br>13- 0 ( =0) Reserved  |
| 88   | 0x3FH   | Ultra DMA transfer modes<br>15- 8 (=xx) Current active Ultra DMA transfer mode<br>15-14 Reserved (=0)<br>13 Mode 5 1= Active 0= Not Active<br>12 Mode 4 1= Active 0= Not Active<br>11 Mode 3 1= Active 0= Not Active<br>10 Mode 2 1= Active 0= Not Active<br>9 Mode 1 1= Active 0= Not Active<br>8 Mode 0 1= Active 0= Not Active<br>7- 0 (=3F) Ultra DMA transfer mode supported<br>7-6 Reserved (=0)<br>5 Mode 5 1= Support<br>4 Mode 4 1= Support<br>3 Mode 3 1= Support<br>2 Mode 2 1= Support<br>1 Mode 1 1= Support<br>0 Mode 0 1= Support |

Figure 84. Identify Device Information (4 of 6)

| Word   | Content | Description  |
|--------|---------|--|
| 89     | xxxxH   | Time required for Security Erase Unit completion<br>Time = value * 2 (minutes)   |
| 90     | 0000H   | Time required for Enhanced security erase completion   |
| 91     | 0000H   | Current advanced power management value  |
| 92     | FFFEH   | Master Password Revision Code  |
| 93     | xxxxH   | Hardware reset result. Bit assignments<br>15-14 (=01) Word 93 is valid<br>13 CBLID- status 1= Above Vih 0= Below Vil<br>12- 8 Dev 1 H/W reset result<br>12 Reserved<br>11 PDIAG- assertion 1= assert 0= not assert<br>10- 9 How to determine the device number<br>00=Reserved<br>01=Jumper<br>10=CSEL signal<br>11=Some other method<br>8 Shall be set to one if Dev 1<br>7- 0 Dev 0 H/W reset result<br>7 Reserved<br>6 Respond for Dev 1. 1= resp. 0= not resp.<br>5 DASP- detection. 1= detect 0= not detect<br>4 PDIAG- detection. 1= detect 0= not detect<br>3 Device 0 diag. 1=pass 0= fail<br>2- 1 How to determine the device number<br>00=Reserved 01=Jumper<br>10=CSEL signal 11=Some other method<br>0 Shall be set to one if Dev 0 |
| 94     | xxxxH   | Current Automatic Acoustic management value<br>15- 8 Vendor's Recommended Acoustic Management value<br>7- 0 Current Automatic Acoustic Management value  |
| 95-126 | 0000H   | Reserved   |
| 127    | 0000H   | Removable Media Status Notification feature set<br>0000H = Not supported   |
| 128    | xxxxH   | Device Lock Function. Bit assignments<br>15- 9 Reserved<br>8 Security Level 1= Maximum, 0= High<br>7- 6 Reserved<br>5 Enhanced erase 1= Support<br>4 Expire 1= Expired<br>3 Freeze 1= Frozen<br>2 Lock 1= Locked<br>1 Enable/Disable 1= Enable<br>0 Capability 1= Support  |

Figure 84. Identify Device Information (5 of 6)

| Word    | Content | Description  |
|---------|---------|--|
| 129     | xxxxH   | Current Set Feature Option. Bit assignments<br>15- 4 Reserve<br>3 Auto reassign 1= Enable<br>2 Reverting 1= Enable<br>1 Read Look-ahead 1= Enable<br>0 Write Cache 1= Enable |
| 130-159 | xxxxH   | Reserved   |
| 160-254 | 0000H   | Reserved   |
| 255     | xxA5H   | 15-8 Checksum. This value is the two's complement<br>of the sum of all bytes in byte 0 through 510<br>7-0 (A5) Signature   |

---

Figure 84. Identify Device Information (6 of 6)

## 15.7 Idle (E3h/97h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 85. Idle Command (E3h/97h)

The Idle command causes the device to enter Idle mode immediately and to set the auto power down time-out parameter (standby timer). And the timer then starts counting down.

When the Idle mode is entered, the device is spun up to operating speed. If the device is already spinning, the spin up sequence is not executed.

During Idle mode the device is spinning and ready to respond to host commands immediately.

## Output parameters to the device

**Sector Count** Time-out Parameter. If it is zero, the automatic power down sequence is disabled. If it is non-zero, then the automatic power down sequence is enabled. The time-out interval is shown below:

| <b>Value</b> | <b>Time-out</b>          |
|--------------|--------------------------|
| 0            | Timer disabled           |
| 1-240        | Value * 5 seconds        |
| 241-251      | (Value-240) * 30 minutes |
| 252          | 21 minutes               |
| 253          | 8 hours                  |
| 254          | 21 minutes 10 seconds    |
| 255          | 21 minutes 15 seconds    |

When the automatic power down sequence is enabled, the drive will enter Standby mode automatically if the time-out interval expires with no drive access from the host. The time-out interval will be reinitialized if there is a drive access before the time-out interval expires.

## 15.8 Idle Immediate (E1h/95h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 86. Idle Immediate Command (E1h/95h)

The Idle Immediate command causes the device to enter Idle mode.

The device is spun up to operating speed. If the device is already spinning, the spin up sequence is not executed.

During Idle mode the device is spinning and ready to respond to host commands immediately.

The Idle Immediate command will not affect the auto power down time-out parameter.

## 15.9 Initialize Device Parameters (91h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Count                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | H | H | H | H                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 87. Initialize Device Parameters Command (91h)

The Initialize Device Parameters command enables the host to set the number of sectors per track and the number of heads minus 1 per cylinder. Words 54–58 in Identify Device Information reflect these parameters.

The parameters remain in effect until following events:

- Another Initialize Device Parameters command is received.
- The device is powered off.
- Soft reset/Hard reset has occurred and the Set Feature option of CCh is set instead of 66h.

### Output parameters to the device

#### Sector Count

The number of sectors per track. Zero does not mean there are 256 sectors per track, but that there are no sectors per track.

**H** The number of heads minus 1 per cylinder. The minimum is 0 and the maximum is 15.

*Note: The following conditions need to be satisfied to avoid invalid number of cylinders beyond FFFFh.*

- $(\text{Total number of user addressable sectors}) / ((\text{Sector Count}) * (\text{H} + 1)) \leq \text{FFFFh}$
- The total number of user addressable sectors is described in Identify Device command.

## 15.10 NOP (00h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |               |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|---------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7             | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -             | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Error         | see below     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | Initial Value |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | Initial Value |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | Initial Value |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | Initial Value |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | Initial Value |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Command                        | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0                             | Status        | see below     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 88. NOP Command (00h)

This command always fails with an error. The device responds with command aborted.

### Output parameters to the device

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Feature</b> | Subcommand code                                |
|                | <b>00H</b> Abort any outstanding queue         |
|                | <b>01H–FFH</b> Not abort any outstanding queue |

The value of Sector Count, Sector Number, Cylinder High/Low, Device/Head set by host is not changed.



## 15.11 Read Buffer (E4h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 89. Read Buffer Command (E4h)

The Read Buffer command transfers a sector of data from the sector buffer of device to the host.

The sector is transferred through the Data Register 16 bits at a time.

The sector transferred will be from the same part of the buffer written to by the last Write Buffer command. The contents of the sector may be different if any reads or writes have occurred since the Write Buffer command was issued.

## 15.12 Read DMA (C8h/C9h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Count  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Sector Number                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Number | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder Low                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder Low  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder High                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder High | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | L | 1 | D | H | H | H | H                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | H | H | H | H |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | R                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| V              | V   | 0 | V   | 0 | V   | 0   | V   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 90. Read DMA Command (C8h/C9h)

The Read DMA command reads one or more sectors of data from disk media, then transfers the data from the device to the host.

The sectors are transferred through the Data Register 16 bits at a time.

The host initializes a slave-DMA channel prior to issuing the command. The data transfers are qualified by DMARQ and are performed by the slave-DMA channel. The device issues only one interrupt per command to indicate that data transfer has terminated and status is available.

If an uncorrectable error occurs, the read will be terminated at the failing sector.

### Output parameters to the device

**Sector Count** The number of continuous sectors to be transferred. If zero is specified, then 256 sectors will be transferred.

**Sector Number** The sector number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode, this register specifies LBA address bits 0–7 to be transferred. (L=1)

**Cylinder High/Low** The cylinder number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register specifies LBA address bits 8–15 (Low) 16–23 (High) to be transferred. (L=1)

- H** The head number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register specifies LBA bits 24–27 to be transferred. (L=1)
- R** The retry bit. If it is set to one, then retries are disabled.

**Input parameters from the device**

- Sector Count** The number of requested sectors not transferred. This will be zero, unless an unrecoverable error occurs.
- Sector Number** The sector number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)  
In LBA mode, this register contains current LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)
- Cylinder High/Low** The cylinder number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)  
In LBA mode, this register contains current LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1)
- H** The head number of the sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode, this register contains current LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)

## 15.13 Read DMA Queued (C7h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Count  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Sector Number                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Number | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder Low                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder Low  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder High                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder High | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | L | 1 | D | H | H | H | H                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | H | H | H | H |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| V              | V   | 0 | V   | 0 | V   | 0   | V   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 91. Read DMA Queued Command (C7h)

This command executes in a similar manner to a READ DMA command. The device may perform a bus release or it may execute the data transfer without performing a bus release if the data is ready to transfer.

If the device performs a bus release, the host shall reselect the device using the SERVICE command.

Once the data transfer is begun, the device does not perform a bus release until the entire data transfer has been completed.

### Output parameters to the device

- Feature**                    The number of sectors to be transferred. A value of 00h indicates that 256 sectors are to be transferred.
- Sector Count**            Bits 7–3 (Tag) contain the Tag for the command being delivered.
- Sector Number**         The starting sector number or LBA address bits 7–0.
- Cylinder High/Low**     The starting cylinder number or the LBA address bits 23–8.
- H**                            The starting head number or the LBA address bits 27–24.

### **Input parameters from the device on bus release**

**Sector Count** Bits 7–3 (Tag) contain the Tag of the command being bus released.  
Bit 2 (REL) is set to one.  
Bit 1 (I/O) is cleared to zero.  
Bit 0 (C/D) is cleared to zero.

**Sector Number, Cylinder High/low, H** n/a.

**SRV** This parameter is cleared to zero when the device performs a bus release. This bit is set to one when the device is ready to transfer data.

### **Input parameters from the device on command complete**

**Sector Count** Bits 7–3 (Tag) contain the Tag of the completed command.  
Bit 2 (REL) is cleared to zero.  
Bit 1 (I/O) is set to one.  
Bit 0 (C/D) is set to one.

**Sector Number, Cylinder High/Low, H**

The sector address of unrecoverable error—applicable only when an unrecoverable error has occurred.

**SRV** This parameter is cleared to zero.

## 15.14 Read Long (22h/23h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | V |
| Sector Number                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Number | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder Low                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder Low  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder High                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder High | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | L | 1 | D | H | H | H | H                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | H | H | H | H |
| Command                        | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | R                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | V   | 0 | V   | 0   | V   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 92. Read Long Command (22h/23h)

The Read Long command reads the designated one sector of data and the ECC bytes from disk media, then transfers the data and ECC bytes from the device to the host.

After 512 bytes of data have been transferred, the device will keep setting DRQ=1 to indicate that the device is ready to transfer the ECC bytes to the host. The data is transferred 16 bits at a time; the ECC bytes are transferred 8 bits at a time. The number of ECC bytes is 4 or 40 according to setting of Set Feature option. The default setting is 4 bytes of ECC data.

The command makes a single attempt to read the data and does not check the data using ECC, whatever is read is returned to the host.

### Output parameters to the device

**Sector Count** The number of continuous sectors to be transferred. The Sector Count must be set to one.

**Sector Number** The sector number of the sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)

**Cylinder High/Low** The cylinder number of the sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1)

**H** The head number of the sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)

**R** The retry bit. If set to one, then retries are disabled.

**Input parameters from the device**

**Sector Count** The number of requested sectors not transferred.

**Sector Number** The sector number of the transferred sector. (L=0)

In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)

**Cylinder High/Low** The cylinder number of the transferred sector. (L=0)

In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1)

**H** The head number of the transferred sector. (L=0)

In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)

It should be noted that the device internally uses 40 bytes of ECC data on all data written or read from the disk. The 4 byte mode of operation is provided via an emulation. It is recommended that for testing the effectiveness and integrity of the devices ECC functions that the 40 byte ECC mode be used.

## 15.15 Read Multiple (C4h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Count  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Sector Number                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Number | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder Low                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder Low  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder High                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder High | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | L | 1 | D | H | H | H | H                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | H | H | H | H |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | V   | 0 | V   | 0 | V   | 0   | V   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 93. Read Multiple Command (C4h)

The Read Multiple command reads one or more sectors of data from disk media, then transfers the data from the device to the host.

The sectors are transferred through the Data Register 16 bits at a time. Command execution is identical to the Read Sectors command except that an interrupt is generated for each block—as defined by the Set Multiple command—instead of for each sector.

### Output parameters to the device

- Sector Count** The number of continuous sectors to be transferred. If zero is specified, then 256 sectors will be transferred.
- Sector Number** The sector number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode, this register contains LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)
- Cylinder High/Low** The cylinder number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode, this register contains LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1)
- H** The head number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)

### Input parameters from the device

- Sector Count** The number of requested sectors not transferred. This will be zero unless an unrecoverable error occurs.



|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <b>Sector Number</b>     | The sector number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)<br>In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)                        |
| <b>Cylinder High/Low</b> | The cylinder number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)<br>In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1) |
| <b>H</b>                 | The head number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)<br>In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)                        |

## 15.16 Read Native Max Address (F8h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | L | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | H | H | H | H |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 94. Read Native Max LBA/CYL (F8h)

This command returns the native max LBA/CYL of the drive which is not effected by Set Max Address command.

### Input parameters from the device

- Sector Number** In LBA mode this register contains native max LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)  
In CHS mode this register contains native max sector number. (L=0)
- Cylinder High/Low** In LBA mode this register contains native max LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1)  
In CHS mode this register contains native max cylinder number. (L=0)
- H** In LBA mode this register contains native max LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)  
In CHS mode this register contains native max head number. (L=0)

## 15.17 Read Sectors (20h/21h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Count  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Sector Number                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Number | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder Low                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder Low  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder High                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder High | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | L | 1 | D | H | H | H | H                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | H | H | H | H |
| Command                        | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | R                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | V   | 0 | V   | 0 | V   | 0   | V   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 95. Read Sectors Command (20h/21h)

The Read Sectors command reads one or more sectors of data from disk media, then transfers the data from the device to the host.

The sectors are transferred through the Data Register 16 bits at a time.

If an uncorrectable error occurs, the read will be terminated at the failing sector.

### Output parameters to the device

- Sector Count** The number of continuous sectors to be transferred. If zero is specified, then 256 sectors will be transferred.
- Sector Number** The sector number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)
- Cylinder High/Low** The cylinder number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1)
- H** The head number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)
- R** The retry bit. If set to one, then retries are disabled.

### Input parameters from the device

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <b>Sector Count</b>      | The number of requested sectors not transferred. This will be zero, unless an unrecoverable error occurs.  |
| <b>Sector Number</b>     | The sector number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)<br>In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)                        |
| <b>Cylinder High/Low</b> | The cylinder number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)<br>In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1) |
| <b>H</b>                 | The head number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)<br>In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)                        |

## 15.18 Read Verify Sectors (40h/41h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Count  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Sector Number                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Number | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder Low                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder Low  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder High                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder High | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | L | 1 | D | H | H | H | H                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | H | H | H | H |
| Command                        | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | R                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | V   | 0 | V   | 0 | V   | 0   | V   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 96. Read Verify Sectors Command (40h/41h)

The Read Verify Sectors verifies one or more sectors on the device. No data is transferred to the host.

The difference of Read Sectors command and Read Verify Sectors command is whether the data is transferred to the host or not.

If an uncorrectable error occurs, the read verify will be terminated at the failing sector.

### Output parameters to the device

- Sector Count** The number of continuous sectors to be verified. If zero is specified, then 256 sectors will be verified.
- Sector Number** The sector number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)
- Cylinder High/Low** The cylinder number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1)
- H** The head number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)
- R** The retry bit. If set to one, then retries are disabled.

### Input parameters from the device

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <b>Sector Count</b>      | The number of requested sectors not verified. This will be zero, unless an unrecoverable error occurs.   |
| <b>Sector Number</b>     | The sector number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)<br>In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)                        |
| <b>Cylinder High/Low</b> | The cylinder number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)<br>In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1) |
| <b>H</b>                 | The head number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)<br>In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)                        |

## 15.19 Recalibrate (1xh)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - |   |
| Command                        | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | - | - | - | -                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | V   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 97. Recalibrate Command (1xh)

The Recalibrate command moves the read/write heads from anywhere on the disk to cylinder 0. If the device cannot reach cylinder 0, T0N (Track 0 Not Found) will be set in the Error Register.

## 15.20 Security Disable Password (F6h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 98. Security Disable Password command (F6h)

The Security Disable Password command disables the security mode feature (device lock function).

The Security Disable Password command requests a transfer of a single sector of data from the host including information specified in the figure below. Then the device checks the transferred password. If the User Password or Master Password matches the given password, the device disables the security mode feature (device lock function). This command does not change the Master Password which may be reactivated later by setting User Password. This command should be executed in device unlock mode.

| Word   | Description  |
|--------|--|
| 00     | Control Word<br>bit 0 : Identifier (1- Master, 0- User)<br>bit 1-15 : Reserved |
| 01-16  | Password (32 bytes )   |
| 17-255 | Reserved   |

Figure 99. Password Information for Security Disable Password command

The device will compare the password sent from this host with that specified in the control word.

**Identifier** Zero indicates that the device should check the supplied password against the user password stored internally. One indicates that the device should check the given password against the master password stored internally.



## 15.21 Security Erase Prepare (F3h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 100. Security Erase Prepare Command (F3h)

The Security Erase Prepare Command must be issued immediately before the Security Erase Unit Command to enable device erasing and unlocking.

The Security Erase Prepare Command must be issued immediately before the Format Unit Command. This command is to prevent accidental erasure of the device.

This command does not request to transfer data.

## 15.22 Security Erase Unit (F4h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | V   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 101. Security Erase Unit Command (F4h)

The Security Erase Unit command initializes all user data sectors and then disables the device lock function.

Note that the Security Erase Unit command initializes from LBA 0 to Native MAX LBA. The Host MAX LBA set by the Initialize Drive Parameter or the Set MAX Address command is ignored. So the protected area by the Set MAX Address command is also initialized.

This command requests to transfer a single sector data from the host including information specified in the following figure.

If the password does not match, the device rejects the command with an Aborted error.

| Word   | Description  |
|--------|--|
| 00     | Control Word<br>bit 0 : Identifier (1- Master, 0- User)<br>bit 1 : Erase mode (1- Enhanced, 0- Normal)<br>Enhanced mode is not supported<br>bit 2-15: Reserved |
| 01-16  | Password ( 32 bytes )  |
| 17-255 | Reserved   |

Figure 102. Erase Unit Information

**Identifier**                   Zero indicates that the device should check the supplied password against the user password stored internally. One indicates that the device should check the given password against the master password stored internally.

The Security Erase Unit command erases all user data and disables the security mode feature (device lock function). So after completing this command, all user data will be initialized to zero with write operation. At this time it is not verified with read operation whether the sector of data is initialized correctly. Also, the defective sector information and the reassigned sector information for the device are not updated. The security erase prepare command should be completed immediately prior to the Security Erase Unit command. If the device receives a Security Erase Unit command without a prior Security Erase Prepare command, the device aborts the security erase unit command.

This command disables the security mode feature (device lock function); however the master password is still stored internally within the device and may be reactivated later when a new user password is set. If you execute this command on disabling the security mode feature (device lock function), the password sent by the host is NOT compared with the password stored in the device for either the Master Password or the User Password. The device then erases all user data.

The execution time of this command is set in word 89 of Identify device information.

## 15.23 Security Freeze Lock (F5h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 103. Security Freeze Lock Command (F5h)

The Security Freeze Lock Command allows the device to enter frozen mode immediately.

After this command is completed, the command which updates Security Mode Feature (Device Lock Function) is rejected.

Frozen mode is quit only by Power off.

The following commands are rejected when the device is in frozen mode. For details refer to Figure 73 on page 87.

- Security Set Password
- Security Unlock
- Security Disable Password
- Security Erase Unit

## 15.24 Security Set Password (F1h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 104. Security Set Password Command (F1h)

The Security Set Password command enables security mode feature (device lock function) and sets the master password or the user password.

The security mode feature (device lock function) is enabled by this command and the device is not locked immediately. The device is locked after next power on reset or hard reset. When the MASTER password is set by this command, the master password is registered internally, but the device is NOT locked after next power on reset or hard reset.

This command requests a transfer of a single sector of data from the host including the information specified in the following figure.

The data transferred controls the function of this command.

| Word   | Description  |
|--------|--|
| 00     | Control Word<br>bit 0 : Identifier (1- Master, 0- User)<br>bit 1-7 : Reserved<br>bit 8 : Security level (1- Maximum, 0- High)<br>bit 9-15 : Reserved |
| 01-16  | Password ( 32 bytes )  |
| 17     | Master Password Revision Code<br>Valid if Word 0 bit 0 = 1   |
| 18-255 | Reserved   |

Figure 105. Security Set Password Information

- Identifier** Zero indicates that device regards Password as User Password. One indicates that device regards Password as Master Password.
- Security Level** Zero indicates High level, one indicates Maximum level. If the host sets High level and the password is forgotten, then the Master Password can be used to unlock the device. If the host sets Maximum level and the user password is forgotten, only a Security Erase Prepare/Security Unit command can unlock the device and all data will be lost.
- Password** The text of the password—all 32 bytes are always significant.

**Master Password Revision Code**

The revision code field is returned in the IDENTIFY DEVICE word 92. The valid revision codes are 0001h through FFFEh. The device accepts the command with a value of 0000h or FFFFh in this field but does not change the Master Password Revision code.

The setting of the Identifier and Security level bits interact as follows:

**Identifier=User / Security level = High**

The password supplied with the command will be saved as the new user password. The security mode feature (lock function) will be enabled from the next power on. The drive may then be unlocked by either the user password or the previously set master password.

**Identifier=Master / Security level = High**

This combination will set a master password but will NOT enable the security mode feature (lock function).

**Identifier=User / Security level = Maximum**

The password supplied with the command will be saved as the new user password. The security mode feature (lock function) will be enabled from the next power on. The drive may then be unlocked by only the user password. The master password previously set is still stored in the drive but may NOT be used to unlock the device.

**Identifier=Master / Security level = Maximum**

This combination will set a master password but will NOT enable the security mode feature (lock function).

## 15.25 Security Unlock (F2h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | V   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 106. Security Unlock Command (F2h)

This command unlocks the password and causes the device to enter device unlock mode. If power on reset or hard reset is done without executing the Security Disable Password command after this command is completed, the device will be in device lock mode. The password has not been changed yet.

The Security Unlock command requests to transfer a single sector of data from the host including information specified in the following figure.

If the Identifier bit is set to master and the drive is in high security mode, then the password supplied will be compared with the stored master password. If the drive is in maximum security mode, the security unlock will be rejected.

If the Identifier bit is set to user, then the drive compares the supplied password with the stored user password.

If the password compare fails then the device returns an abort error to the host and decrements the unlock attempt counter. This counter is initially set to 5 and is decremented for each password mismatch. When this counter reaches zero, all password protected commands are rejected until a hard reset or a power off.

The user can detect if the attempt to unlock the device has failed due to a mismatched password as this is the only reason that an abort error will be returned by the drive AFTER the password information has been sent to the device. If an abort error is returned by the device BEFORE the password data has been sent to the drive, then another problem exists.

## 15.26 Seek (7xh)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Number | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder Low                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder Low  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder High                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder High | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | L | 1 | D | H | H | H | H                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | - | - | - | -                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | V   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 107. Seek Command (7xh)

The Seek command initiates a seek to the designated track and selects the designated head. The device need not be formatted for a seek to execute properly.

### Output parameters to the device

**Sector Number** In LBA mode this register specifies LBA address bits 0–7 for seek. (L=1)

**Cylinder High/Low** The cylinder number of the seek.

In LBA mode this register specifies LBA address bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High) for seek. (L=1)

**H** The head number of the seek.

In LBA mode this register specifies LBA address bits 24–27 for seek. (L=1)

### Input parameters from the device

**Sector Number** In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)

**Cylinder High/Low** In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1)

**H** In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)



---

## 15.27 Service (A2h)

---

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | - | - | - | D | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |

---

Figure 108. Service Command (A2h)

The Service command is used to provide data transfer and/or status of a command that was previously bus released.

### Output parameters to the device

**D** Selected device

### Input parameters from the device

Input from the device as a result of a Service command are described in the command description for the command for which Service is being requested.

## 15.28 Set Features (EFh)

| Command Block Output Registers |        |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|--------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7      | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | -      | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | V      | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | Note 1 |   |   |   |   |   |   |                               | Sector Count  | -         |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Number                  | -      |   |   |   |   |   |   |                               | Sector Number | -         |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Cylinder Low                   | -      |   |   |   |   |   |   |                               | Cylinder Low  | -         |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Cylinder High                  | -      |   |   |   |   |   |   |                               | Cylinder High | -         |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Device/Head                    | 1      | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Command                        | 1      | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 109. Set Features Command (EFh)

The Set Feature command is to establish the following parameters which affect the execution of certain features as shown in the following table.

ABT will be set to 1 in the Error Register if the Feature register contains any undefined values.

| Command feature   | Destination code for this command |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| Enable write cache  | 02H                               |
| Set transfer mode based on value in sector count register | 03H                               |
| Enable Advanced Power Management                          | 05H                               |
| Enable Power-up in Standby feature set                    | 06H                               |
| Power-up in Standby feature set device spin-up            | 07H                               |
| Enable Address Offset mode                                | 09H                               |
| Enable Automatic Acoustic Management                      | 42H                               |
| 40 bytes of ECC apply on Read Long/Write Long commands    | 44H                               |
| Disable read look-ahead feature                           | 55H                               |
| Enable release interrupt                                  | 5DH                               |
| Disable reverting to power on defaults                    | 66H                               |
| Disable write cache                                       | 82H                               |
| Disable Advanced Power Management                         | 85H                               |
| Disable Power-up in Standby mode                          | 86H                               |
| Disable Address Offset mode                               | 89H                               |
| Enable read look-ahead feature                            | AAH                               |
| 4 bytes of ECC apply on Read Long/Write Long commands     | BBH                               |
| Disable Automatic Acoustic Management                     | C2H                               |
| Enable reverting to power on defaults                     | CCH                               |
| Disable release interrupt                                 | DDH                               |

*Note: After a power on reset of hard reset the device is set to the following features as default:*

|                                |           |
|--------------------------------|-----------|
| Write cache                    | : Enable  |
| ECC bytes                      | : 4 bytes |
| Read look-ahead                | : Enable  |
| Reverting to power on defaults | : Disable |
| Release interrupt              | : Disable |

Figure 110. Output parameters to the device

## 15.28.1 Set Transfer mode

When Feature register is 03h (=Set Transfer mode), the Sector Count Register specifies the transfer mechanism. The upper 5 bits define the type of transfer and the low order 3 bits encode the mode value.

|  |       |                                   |
|--|-------|-----------------------------------|
| PIO Default Transfer Mode                | 00000 | 000                               |
| PIO Default Transfer Mode, Disable IORDY | 00000 | 001                               |
| PIO Flow Control Transfer Mode x         | 00001 | nnn (nnn=000,001,010,011,100)     |
| Multiword DMA Mode x                     | 00100 | nnn (nnn=000,001,010)             |
| Ultra DMA Mode x                         | 01000 | nnn (nnn=000,001,010,011,100,101) |

## 15.28.2 Write Cache

If the number of auto reassigned sector reaches the device's reassignment capacity, the write cache function will be automatically disabled. Although the device still accepts the Set Features command with Feature register = 02h without error, the write cache function will remain disabled. For the current write cache function status refer to the Identify Device Information (word 85 or 129) by Identify Device command.

## 15.28.3 Advanced Power Management

When Feature register is 05h (=Enable Advanced Power Management), the Sector Count Register specifies the Advanced Power Management level.

|        |     |   |
|--------|-----|---|
| C0-FFh | --- | Aborted   |
| 80-BFh | --- | The lowest power consumption mode is Low power Idle mode  |
| 40-7Fh | --- | The lowest power consumption mode is Low RPM standby mode |
| 00-3Fh | --- | Aborted   |

### 15.28.3.1 Low Power Idle mode

In Low Power Idle mode additional electronics are powered off and the heads are unloaded onto the ramp. The spindle continues to rotate at the full speed during these electronic power offs and head unloads.

### 15.28.3.2 Low RPM standby mode

The heads are unloaded on the ramp and the spindle is rotated at the 60–65% of full speed.

When the Feature register is 85h (=Disable Advanced Power Management) the deepest Power Saving mode becomes normal Idle.

## 15.28.4 Automatic Acoustic Management

When the Feature register is 42h (=Enable Automatic Acoustic Management) the Sector Count Register specifies the Automatic Acoustic Management level.

|        |     |                         |
|--------|-----|-------------------------|
| FF     | --- | Aborted                 |
| C0-FEh | --- | Set to Normal Seek mode |
| 80-BFh | --- | Set to Quiet Seek mode  |
| 00-7Fh | --- | Aborted                 |

The device preserves enabling or disabling of Automatic Acoustic Management and the current Automatic Acoustic Management level setting across all forms of reset—that is, Power on, Hardware, and Software Resets.

## 15.29 Set Max Address (F9h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | B                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Number | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder Low                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder Low  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder High                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder High | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | L | 1 | D | H | H | H | H                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | H | H | H | H |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 111. Set Max Address (F9h)

If the Set Max Freeze Lock command is immediately preceded by a Read Native Max Address command, this command is regarded as a Set Max Address command. The device receives this command without a prior Read Native Max Address command, the device regards as Set Max security extensions command according to feature register value. Valid features values are as shown below:

1. 01h indicates Set Max Set Password command
2. 02h indicates Set Max Lock command
3. 03h indicates Set Max Unlock command
4. 04h indicates Set Max Freeze LOCK command

This command overwrites the maximum number of Address of the drive in a range of actual device capacity. Once device receives this command, all accesses beyond that Address are rejected with setting ABORT bit in status register. Identify device command returns the Address which is set via this command as a default value.

If the device in Address Offset mode receives this command with the nonvolatile option, the device returns aborted error to the host.

The device returns command aborted for a second nonvolatile Set Max Address command until next power on or hardware reset.

The device returns command aborted during Set Max Locked mode or Set Max Frozen mode.

### Output parameters to the device

- B** Option bit for selection whether nonvolatile or volatile. B=0 is volatile condition. When B=1, MAX Address which is set by Set Max Address command is preserved by POR. When B=0, MAX Address which is set by Set Max Address command will be lost by POR. B=1 is not valid when the device is in Address Offset mode.
- Sector Number** In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 0–7 which is to be set. (L=1)  
In CHS mode this register is ignored. (L=0)
- Cylinder High/Low** In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High) which is to be set. (L=1)  
In CHS mode this register contains cylinder number which is to be set. (L=0)
- H** In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 24–27 which is to be set. (L=1)  
In CHS mode this register is ignored. (L=0)

### Input parameters from the device

- Sector Number** In LBA mode this register contains max LBA bits 0–7 which is set. (L=1)  
In CHS mode this register contains max sector number. (L=0)
- Cylinder High/Low** In LBA mode this register contains max LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High) which is set. (L=1)  
In CHS mode this register contains max cylinder number which is set. (L=0)
- H** In LBA mode this register contains max LBA bits 24–27 which is set. (L=1)  
In CHS mode this register contains max head number. (L=0)

## 15.29.1 Set Max Set Password (Feature = 01h)

| Command Block Output Registers |                 | Command Block Input Registers |                 |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| Register                       | 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 | Register                      | 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 |
| Data                           | -----           | Data                          | -----           |
| Feature                        | 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 | Error                         | see below       |
| Sector Count                   | -----           | Sector Count                  | -----           |
| Sector Number                  | -----           | Sector Number                 | -----           |
| Cylinder Low                   | -----           | Cylinder Low                  | -----           |
| Cylinder High                  | -----           | Cylinder High                 | -----           |
| Device/Head                    | 1 - 1 D -----   | Device/Head                   | 1 - 1 D -----   |
| Command                        | 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 | Status                        | see below       |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |         |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0       |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ER<br>D |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | V       |

Figure 112. Set Max Set Password

The device regards as Set Max Address command if this command is immediately preceded by a Read Native Max Address command.

This command requests a transfer of a single sector of data from the host including the information specified in the following figure.

The password is retained by the device until the next power cycle. When the device accepts this command, the device is in Set Max Unlocked state.

| Word   | Description        |
|--------|--------------------|
| 00     | Reserved           |
| 01-16  | Password (32 byte) |
| 17-255 | Reserved           |

Figure 113. Set Max Set Password data contents

## 15.29.2 Set Max Lock (Feature = 02h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | 1         | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |   |     |   |     |     |     |   |
|----------------|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|---|
| 7              | 6 | 5   | 4 | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0 |
| CRCUNC         | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |   |
| 0              | 0 | 0   | 0 | 0   | V   | 0   | 0 |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |         |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0       |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ER<br>D |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | V       |

Figure 114. Set Max Lock

The device regards as Set Max Address command if this command is immediately preceded by a Read Native Max Address command.

This command sets the device into Set Max Locked state. After this command is completed, any other Set Max commands except Set Max Unlock and Set Max Freeze Lock are rejected. The device remains in this state until a power cycle or the acceptance of a Set Max Unlock or Set Max Freeze Lock command.



### 15.29.3 Set Max Unlock (Feature = 03h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | 1         | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 115. Set Max Unlock (F9h)

The device regards as Set Max Address command, if this command is immediately preceded by a Read Native Max Address command.

This command requests a transfer of a single sector of data from the host including the information specified in Figure 111 on page 151 with the stored SET MAX password.

If the password compare fails, the device returns an abort error to the host and decrements the unlock attempt counter. This counter is initially set to 5 and is decremented for each password mismatch. When this counter reaches zero, all Set Max Unlock commands are rejected until a hard reset or a power off occurs.

If the password compare matches, then the device sets the Set Max Unlocked state and all Set Max commands are accepted.

## 15.29.4 Set Max Freeze Lock (Feature = 04h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | 1         | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 116. Set Max Freeze Lock (F9h)

If the Set Max Freeze Lock command is immediately preceded by a Read Native Max Address command, this command is regarded as a Set Max Address command.

The Set Max Freeze Lock command sets the device to Set Max Frozen state. After command completion any subsequent Set Max commands are rejected. Commands disabled by Set Max Freeze Lock are the following:

1. Set Max Address
2. Set Max Set PASSWORD
3. Set Max Lock
4. Set Max Unlock

## 15.30 Set Multiple (C6h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 117. Set Multiple Command (C6h)

The Set Multiple command enables the device to perform Read and Write Multiple commands and establishes the block size for these commands. The block size is the number of sectors to be transferred for each interrupt.

If an invalid block size is specified, an Abort error will be returned to the host and Read Multiple and Write Multiple commands will be disabled.

### Output parameters to the device

**Sector Count** This is the block size to be used for Read Multiple and Write Multiple commands. Valid block sizes can be selected from 0, 2, 4, 8 or 16. If 0 is specified, then the Read Multiple and the Write Multiple commands are disabled.

## 15.31 Sleep (E6h/99h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 118. Sleep Command (E6h/99h)

This command causes the device to enter the Sleep Mode.

The device is spun down and the interface becomes inactive. If the device is already spun down, the spin down sequence is not executed.

The only way to recover from the Sleep Mode is with a software reset or a hardware reset.

## 15.32 S.M.A.R.T. Function Set (B0h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Count  | -         |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Number                  | - |   |   |   |   |   |   |                               | Sector Number | -         |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Cylinder Low                   | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1                             | Cylinder Low  | -         |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Cylinder High                  | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0                             | Cylinder High | -         |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Command                        | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | V   | 0 | V   | 0 | V   | 0   | V   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 119. S.M.A.R.T. Function Set Command (B0h)

The S.M.A.R.T. Function Set command provides access to Attribute Values, Attribute Thresholds, and other low level subcommands that can be used for logging and reporting purposes and to accommodate special user needs. The S.M.A.R.T. Function Set command has several separate subcommands which are selectable via the Features Register of the device when the S.M.A.R.T. Function Set command is issued by the host.

In order to select a subcommand the host must write the subcommand code to the Features Register of the device before issuing the S.M.A.R.T. Function Set command. The subcommands and their respective codes are listed below.

---

| Code | Subcommand                                   |
|------|--|
| D0h  | S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Values             |
| D1h  | S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Thresholds         |
| D2h  | S.M.A.R.T. Enable/disable Attribute Autosave |
| D3h  | S.M.A.R.T. Save Attribute Values             |
| D4h  | S.M.A.R.T. Execute Off-line Immediate        |
| D5h  | S.M.A.R.T. Read Log Sector                   |
| D6h  | S.M.A.R.T. Write Log Sector                  |
| D8h  | S.M.A.R.T. Enable Operations                 |
| D9h  | S.M.A.R.T. Disable Operations                |
| DAh  | S.M.A.R.T. Return Status                     |
| DBh  | S.M.A.R.T. Enable/Disable Automatic Off Line |

---

Figure 120. S.M.A.R.T. Function Set subcommands

### 15.32.1 S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Values (Subcommand D0h)

This subcommand returns the Attribute Threshold of the device to the host. Upon receipt of the S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Values subcommand from the host, the device saves any updated Attribute Values to the Attribute Data sectors, and then transfers the 512 bytes of Attribute Value information to the host.

### 15.32.2 S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Thresholds (Subcommand D1h)

This subcommand returns the Attribute Thresholds of the device to the host. Upon receipt of the S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Thresholds subcommand from the host the device reads the Attribute Thresholds—from the Attribute Threshold sectors—and then transfers the 512 bytes of Attribute Thresholds information to the host.

### 15.32.3 S.M.A.R.T. Enable/Disable Attribute Autosave (Subcommand D2h)

This subcommand enables and disables the Attribute Autosave feature of the device. The S.M.A.R.T. Enable/Disable Attribute Autosave subcommand either allows the device to automatically save its updated Attribute Values to the Attribute Data Sector periodically or causes the Autosave feature to be disabled. The state of the Attribute Autosave feature—either enabled or disabled—will be preserved by the device across power cycle.

A value of 00h written by the host into the Sector Count Register of the device before issuing the S.M.A.R.T. Enable/Disable Attribute Autosave subcommand will cause this feature to be disabled. Disabling this feature does not preclude the device from saving Attribute Values to the Attribute Data sectors during some other normal operation such as during a power-up or power-down.

A value of F1h written by the host into the Sector Count Register of the device before issuing the S.M.A.R.T. Enable/Disable Attribute Autosave subcommand will cause this feature to be enabled. Any other non-zero value written by the host into this register before issuing the S.M.A.R.T. Enable/Disable Attribute Autosave subcommand will not change the current Autosave status but the device will respond with the error code specified in Figure 132, "S.M.A.R.T. Error Codes" on page 174.

The SMART Disable Operations subcommand disables the Autosave feature along with the S.M.A.R.T. operations of the device.

Upon receipt of the subcommand from the host the device asserts BSY, enables or disables the Autosave feature, clears BSY, and asserts INTRQ.

### 15.32.4 S.M.A.R.T. Save Attribute Values (Subcommand D3h)

This subcommand causes the device to immediately save any updated Attribute Values to the Attribute Data sector of the device regardless of the state of the Attribute Autosave feature. Upon receipt of the S.M.A.R.T. Save Attribute Values subcommand from the host the device writes any updated Attribute Values to the Attribute Data sector.

### 15.32.5 S.M.A.R.T. Execute Off-line Immediate (Subcommand D4h)

This subcommand causes the device to immediately initiate the set of activities that collect Attribute data in an off-line mode (off-line routine) or execute a self-test routine in either captive or off-line mode.

The Sector Number register shall be set to specify the operation to be executed.

| Sector Number | Operation to be executed   |
|---------------|--|
| 0             | Execute S.M.A.R.T. off-line data collection routine immediately            |
| 1             | Execute S.M.A.R.T. Short self-test routine immediately in off-line mode    |
| 2             | Execute S.M.A.R.T. Extended self-test routine immediately in off-line mode |
| 127           | Abort off-line mode self-test routine                                      |
| 129           | Execute S.M.A.R.T. Short self-test routine immediately in captive mode     |
| 130           | Execute S.M.A.R.T. Extended self-test routine immediately in captive mode  |

**Off-line mode:** The device executes command completion before executing the specified routine. During execution of the routine the device will not set BSY nor clear DRDY. If the device is in the process of performing its routine and is interrupted by a new command from the host, the device will abort or suspend its routine and service the host within two seconds after receipt of the new command. After servicing the interrupting command, the device will resume its routine automatically or not start its routine depending on the interrupting command.

**Captive mode:** When executing self-test in captive mode, the device sets BSY to one and executes the specified self-test routine after receipt of the command. At the end of the routine the device sets the execution result in the Self-test execution status byte—see Figure 122 on page 164—and ATA registers as below and executes command completion.

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| <b>Status</b>   | Set ERR to one when self-test has failed  |
| <b>Error</b>    | Set ABRT to one when self-test has failed |
| <b>Cyl Low</b>  | Set to F4h when self-test has failed      |
| <b>Cyl High</b> | Set to 2Ch when self-test has failed      |

## 15.32.6 S.M.A.R.T. Read Log Sector (Subcommand D5h)

This command returns the specified log sector contents to the host.

The 512 bytes data are returned at a command and the Sector Count value shall be set to one. The Sector Number shall be set to specify the log sector address.

---

| Log sector address | Content                  | Type       |
|--------------------|--------------------------|------------|
| 01h                | S.M.A.R.T. Error Log     | Read Only  |
| 06h                | S.M.A.R.T. Self-test log | Read Only  |
| 80h-9Fh            | Host vendor specific     | Read/Write |

---

Figure 121. Log sector addresses

## 15.32.7 S.M.A.R.T. Write Log Sector (Subcommand D6h)

This command writes 512 bytes data to the specified log sector.

The 512 bytes data are transferred at a command and the Sector Count value shall be set to one. The Sector Number shall be set to specify the log sector address as shown in the preceding figure. If Read Only log sector is specified, the device returns ABRT error.

## 15.32.8 S.M.A.R.T. Enable Operations (Subcommand D8h)

This subcommand enables access to all S.M.A.R.T. capabilities within the device. Prior to receipt of a S.M.A.R.T. Enable Operations subcommand, Attribute Values are neither monitored nor saved by the device. The state of S.M.A.R.T.—either enabled or disabled—will be preserved by the device across power cycles. Once enabled, the receipt of subsequent S.M.A.R.T. Enable Operations subcommands will not affect any of the Attribute Values.

Upon receipt of the S.M.A.R.T. Enable Operations subcommand from the host the device enables S.M.A.R.T. capabilities and functions and then saves any updated Attribute Values to the Attribute Data sector.

## 15.32.9 S.M.A.R.T. Disable Operations (Subcommand D9h)

This subcommand disables all S.M.A.R.T. capabilities within the device including the attribute autosave feature of the device. After receipt of this subcommand the device disables all S.M.A.R.T. operations. Non-self-preserved Attribute Values will no longer be monitored. The state of S.M.A.R.T.—either enabled or disabled—is preserved by the device across power cycles.

Upon receipt of the S.M.A.R.T. Disable Operations subcommand from the host the device disables S.M.A.R.T. capabilities and functions and then saves any updated Attribute Values to the Attribute Data sector.

After receipt of the device of the S.M.A.R.T. Disable Operations subcommand from the host all other S.M.A.R.T. subcommands—with the exception of S.M.A.R.T. Enable Operations—are disabled and invalid and will be aborted by the device—including the S.M.A.R.T. Disable Operations subcommand—returning the error code as specified in Figure 132 on page 174.

Any Attribute Values accumulated and saved to volatile memory prior to receipt of the S.M.A.R.T. Disable Operations command will be preserved in the Attribute Data Sectors of the device. If the device is re-enabled, these Attribute Values will be updated as needed upon receipt of a S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Values or S.M.A.R.T. Save Attribute Values command.



### **15.32.10 S.M.A.R.T. Return Status (Subcommand DAh)**

This command is used to communicate the reliability status of the device upon the request of the host. Upon receipt of the S.M.A.R.T. Return Status subcommand the device saves any updated Pre-failure type Attribute Values to the reserved sector and compares the updated Attribute Values to the Attribute Thresholds.

If the device does not detect a Threshold Exceeded Condition, the device loads 4Fh into the Cylinder Low register and C2h into the Cylinder High register.

If the device detects a Threshold Exceeded Condition, the device loads F4h into the Cylinder Low register and 2Ch into the Cylinder High register.

### **15.32.11 S.M.A.R.T. Enable/Disable Automatic Off-line (Subcommand DBh)**

This subcommand enables and disables the optional feature that causes the device to perform the set of off-line data collection activities that automatically collect attribute data in an off-line mode and then saves this data to the nonvolatile memory of the device. This subcommand may either cause the device to automatically initiate or resume performance of its off-line data collection activities or cause the automatic off-line data collection feature to be disabled.

A value of zero written by the host into the Sector Count register of the device before issuing this subcommand causes the feature to be disabled. Disabling this feature does not preclude the device from saving attribute values to nonvolatile memory during some other normal operation such as during a power-on or a power-off sequence or during an error recovery sequence.

A value of F8h written by the host into the Sector Count register of the device before issuing this subcommand causes this feature to be enabled. Any other non-zero value written by the host into this register before issuing this subcommand is vendor specific and does not change the current Automatic Off-line Data Collection status, but the device may respond with the error code specified in Figure 132 on page 174.

## 15.32.12 Device Attributes Data Structure

The following defines the 512 bytes that make up the Attribute Value information. This data structure is accessed by the host in its entirety using the S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Values subcommand. All multibyte fields shown in these data structures are in byte ordering—that is the least significant byte occupies the lowest numbered byte address location in the field.

| Description   | Byte | Offset | Value |
|---|------|--------|-------|
| Data Structure Revision Number                                      | 2    | 00h    | 0010h |
| 1st Device Attribute  | 12   | 02h    |       |
| ...   | ..   |        |       |
| ...   | ..   |        |       |
| 30th Device Attribute   | 12   | 15Eh   |       |
| Off-line data collection status                                     | 1    | 16Ah   |       |
| Self-test execution status  | 1    | 16Bh   |       |
| Total time in seconds to complete off-line data collection activity | 2    | 16Ch   |       |
| Vendor specific   | 1    | 16Eh   |       |
| Off-line data collection capability                                 | 1    | 16Fh   | 1Bh   |
| S.M.A.R.T. capability   | 2    | 170h   | 0003h |
| S.M.A.R.T. device error logging capability                          | 1    | 172h   | 01h   |
| Self-test failure check point                                       | 1    | 173h   |       |
| Short self-test completion time in minutes                          | 1    | 174h   |       |
| Extended self-test completion time in minutes                       | 1    | 175h   |       |
| Reserved  | 12   | 176h   |       |
| Vendor specific   | 125  | 182h   |       |
| Data structure checksum   | 1    | 1FFh   |       |
|   | 512  |        |       |

Figure 122. Device Attributes Data Structure

### 15.32.12.1 Data Structure Revision Number

The Data Structure Revision Number identifies which version of this data structure is implemented by the device. This revision number identifies both the Attribute Value and Attribute Threshold Data structures.

### 15.32.12.2 Individual Attribute Data Structure

The following defines the 12 bytes that make up the information for each Attribute entry in the Device Attribute Data Structure.

---

| Description                                    | Byte | Offset |
|--|------|--------|
| Attribute ID Number (01h to FFh)               | 1    | 00h    |
| Status flags                                   | 2    | 01h    |
| Attribute Value (valid values from 01h to FDh) | 1    | 03h    |
| Vendor Specific                                | 8    | 04h    |
| Total Bytes                                    | 12   |        |

---

Figure 123. Individual Attribute Data Structure

#### Attribute ID Numbers

Any non-zero value in the Attribute ID Number indicates an active attribute. The device supports the following Attribute ID Numbers.

---

| ID  | Attribute Name  |
|-----|---|
| 0   | Indicates that this entry in the data structure is not used |
| 1   | Raw Read Error Rate   |
| 2   | Throughput Performance                                      |
| 3   | Spin Up Time  |
| 4   | Start/Stop Count  |
| 5   | Reallocated Sector Count                                    |
| 7   | Seek Error Rate   |
| 8   | Seek Time Performance                                       |
| 9   | Power-on Hours Count  |
| 10  | Spin Retry Count  |
| 12  | Device Power Cycle Count                                    |
| 192 | Power-off Retract Count                                     |
| 193 | Load Cycle Count  |
| 194 | Temperature   |
| 196 | Reallocation Event Count                                    |
| 197 | Current Pending Sector Count                                |
| 198 | Off-line Scan Uncorrectable Sector Count                    |
| 199 | Ultra DMA CRC Error Count                                   |

---

Figure 124. Attribute ID Numbers

## Status Flag definitions

| Bit  | Definition  |
|------|---|
| 0    | Pre-failure/advisory bit  |
| 0    | An attribute value less than or equal to its corresponding attribute threshold indicates an advisory condition where the usage or age of the device has exceeded its intended design life period. |
| 1    | An attribute value less than or equal to its corresponding attribute threshold indicates a pre-Failure condition where imminent loss of data is being predicted.                                  |
| 1    | On-line Collective bit  |
| 0    | The attribute value is updated only during Off-line testing.  |
| 1    | The attribute value is updated during On-line testing or during both On-line and Off-line testing.  |
| 2–5  | Vendor specific   |
| 6–15 | Reserved (0)  |

## Normalized values

The device performs conversion of the raw Attribute Values to transform them into normalized values, which the host can then compare with the Threshold values. A Threshold is the excursion limit for a normalized attribute value.

### 15.32.12.3 Off-line Data Collection Status

The value of this byte defines the current status of the off-line activities of the device. Bit 7 indicates Automatic Off-line Data Collection Status.

| Bit 7 | Automatic Off-line Data Collection Status       |
|-------|---|
| 1     | Automatic Off-line Data Collection is enabled.  |
| 0     | Automatic Off-line Data Collection is disabled. |

Bits 0 thru 6 represents a hexadecimal status value reported by the device.

| Value | Definition   |
|-------|--|
| 0     | Off-line data collection never started                     |
| 2     | All segments completed without errors.                     |
| 4     | Off-line data collecting suspended by interrupting command |
| 5     | Off-line data collecting aborted by interrupting command   |
| 6     | Off-line data collection aborted with fatal error          |

#### 15.32.12.4 Self-test execution status

| Bit | Definition   |
|-----|--|
| 0–3 | Percent Self-test remaining.<br><br>An approximate percentage of the self-test routine remaining until completion; given in ten percent increments. Valid values are 0 through 9 |
| 4–7 | Current Self-test execution status   |
| 0   | The self-test routine completed without error or has not been run  |
| 1   | The self-test routine aborted by the host  |
| 2   | The self-test routine interrupted by the host with a hard or soft reset  |
| 3   | The device was unable to complete the self-test routine due to a fatal error or unknown test error   |
| 4   | The self-test routine completed with unknown element failure   |
| 5   | The self-test routine completed with electrical element failure  |
| 6   | The self-test routine completed with servo element failure   |
| 7   | The self-test routine completed with read element failure  |
| 15  | The self-test routine in progress  |

#### 15.32.12.5 Total time in seconds to complete off-line data collection activity

This field tells the host how many seconds the device requires to complete the off-line data collection activity.

#### 15.32.12.6 Off-line data collection capability

| Bit | Definition   |
|-----|--|
| 0   | Execute Off-line Immediate implemented bit   |
| 0   | S.M.A.R.T. Execute Off-line Immediate subcommand is not implemented  |
| 1   | S.M.A.R.T. Execute Off-line Immediate subcommand is implemented  |
| 1   | Enable/disable Automatic Off-line implemented bit  |
| 0   | S.M.A.R.T. Enable/disable Automatic Off-line subcommand is not implemented   |
| 1   | S.M.A.R.T. Enable/disable Automatic Off-line subcommand is implemented   |
| 2   | Abort/restart off-line by host bit   |
| 0   | The device suspends off-line data collection activity after an interrupting command and resume it after some vendor specific event |
| 1   | The device aborts off-line data collection activity upon receipt of a new command  |
| 3   | Off-line Read Scanning implemented bit   |
| 0   | The device does not support Off-line Read Scanning   |
| 1   | The device supports Off-line Read Scanning   |
| 4   | Self-test implemented bit  |
| 0   | Self-test routine is not implemented   |
| 1   | Self-test routine is implemented   |
| 5–7 | Reserved (0)   |

### 15.32.12.7 S.M.A.R.T. capability

This word of bit flags describes the S.M.A.R.T. capabilities of the device. The device will return 03h indicating that the device will save its Attribute Values prior to going into a power saving mode and supports the S.M.A.R.T. ENABLE/DISABLE ATTRIBUTE AUTOSAVE command.

| Bit  | Definition   |
|------|--|
| 0    | Pre-power mode attribute saving capability<br><br>If bit = 1, the device will save its Attribute Values prior to going into a power saving mode (Standby or Sleep mode). |
| 1    | Attribute auto save capability<br><br>If bit = 1, the device supports the S.M.A.R.T. ENABLE/DISABLE ATTRIBUTE AUTOSAVE command.  |
| 2–15 | Reserved (0)   |

### 15.32.12.8 Error logging capability

| Bit | Definition                |
|-----|---------------------------|
| 7–1 | Reserved (0)              |
| 0   | Error Logging support bit |

If bit = 1, the device supports the Error Logging

### 15.32.12.9 Self-test failure check point

This byte indicates the section of the self-test where the device detected a failure.

### 15.32.12.10 Self-test completion time

These bytes are the minimum time in minutes to complete the self-test.

### 15.32.12.11 Data Structure Checksum

The Data Structure Checksum is the two's complement of the result of a simple 8-bit addition of the first 511 bytes in the data structure.

### 15.32.13 Device Attribute Thresholds Data Structure

The following defines the 512 bytes that make up the Attribute Threshold information. This data structure is accessed by the host in its entirety using the S.M.A.R.T. Read Attribute Thresholds. All multibyte fields shown in these data structures are in byte ordering—that is the least significant byte occupies the lowest numbered byte address location in the field.

The sequence of active Attribute Thresholds will appear in the same order as their corresponding Attribute Values.

---

| Description                    | Byte | Offset | Value |
|--------------------------------|------|--------|-------|
| Data Structure Revision Number | 2    | 00h    | 0010h |
| 1st Device Attribute           | 12   | 02h    |       |
| ...                            | ..   |        |       |
| ...                            | ..   |        |       |
| 30th Device Attribute          | 12   | 15Eh   |       |
| Reserved                       | 18   | 16Ah   | 00h   |
| Vendor specific                | 131  | 17Ch   | 00h   |
| Data structure checksum        | 1    | 1FFh   |       |
|                                | 512  |        |       |

---

Figure 125. Device Attribute Thresholds Data Structure

#### 15.32.13.1 Data Structure revision number

This value is the same as the value used in the Device Attributes Values Data Structure.

#### 15.32.13.2 Individual Thresholds Data Structure

The following defines the 12 bytes that make up the information for each Threshold entry in the Device Attribute Thresholds Data Structure. Attribute entries in the Individual Threshold Data Structure is in the same order and correspond to the entries in the Individual Attribute Data Structure.

---

| Description                      | Byte | Offset |
|----------------------------------|------|--------|
| Attribute ID Number (01h to FFh) | 1    | 00h    |
| Attribute Threshold              | 1    | 01h    |
| Reserved (00h)                   | 10   | 02h    |
| Total bytes                      | 12   |        |

---

Figure 126. Individual Threshold Data Structure

#### 15.32.13.3 Attribute ID numbers

Attribute ID Numbers supported by the device are the same as Attribute Values Data Structures.

#### 15.32.13.4 Attribute Threshold

These values are preset at the factory and are not intended to be changeable.

#### 15.32.13.5 Data Structure Checksum

The Data Structure Checksum is the two's compliment of the result of a simple 8-bit addition of the first 511 bytes in the data structure.

#### 15.32.14 S.M.A.R.T. error log sector

The following figure defines the 512 bytes that make up the S.M.A.R.T. error log sector. All multibyte fields shown in these data structures are in byte ordering.

---

| Description                  | Byte | Offset |
|------------------------------|------|--------|
| S.M.A.R.T. error log version | 1    | 00h    |
| Error log pointer            | 1    | 01h    |
| 1st error log data structure | 90   | 02h    |
| 2nd error log data structure | 90   | 5Ch    |
| 3rd error log data structure | 90   | B6h    |
| 4th error log data structure | 90   | 110h   |
| 5th error log data structure | 90   | 16Ah   |
| Device error count           | 2    | 1C4h   |
| Reserved                     | 57   | 1C6h   |
| Data structure checksum      | 1    | 1FFh   |
|                              | 512  |        |

---

Figure 127. SMART error log sector

##### 15.32.14.1 S.M.A.R.T. error log version

This value is set to 01h.

##### 15.32.14.2 Error log pointer

This points to the most recent error log data structure. Only values 1 through 5 are valid.

##### 15.32.14.3 Device error count

This field contains the total number of errors. The value will not roll over.



### 15.32.14.4 Error log data structure

Data format of error data structure is shown in the following table.

---

| Description                | Byte | Offset |
|----------------------------|------|--------|
| 1st command data structure | 12   | 00h    |
| 2nd command data structure | 12   | 0Ch    |
| 3rd command data structure | 12   | 18h    |
| 4th command data structure | 12   | 24h    |
| 5th command data structure | 12   | 30h    |
| Error data structure       | 30   | 3Ch    |
|                            | 90   |        |

---

Figure 128. Error log data structure

### Command data structure

Data format of each command data structure is shown in the following table.

---

| Description                 | Byte | Offset |
|-----------------------------|------|--------|
| Device Control register     | 1    | 00h    |
| Features register           | 1    | 01h    |
| Sector count register       | 1    | 02h    |
| Sector number register      | 1    | 03h    |
| Cylinder Low register       | 1    | 04h    |
| Cylinder High register      | 1    | 05h    |
| Device/Head register        | 1    | 06h    |
| Command register            | 1    | 07h    |
| Timestamp(ms from Power On) | 4    | 08h    |
|                             | 12   |        |

---

Figure 129. Command data structure

**Error data structure:** Data format of error data structure is shown in the following table.

| Description                           | Byte | Offset |
|---------------------------------------|------|--------|
| Reserved                              | 1    | 00h    |
| Error register                        | 1    | 01h    |
| Sector count register                 | 1    | 02h    |
| Sector number register                | 1    | 03h    |
| Cylinder Low register                 | 1    | 04h    |
| Cylinder High register                | 1    | 05h    |
| Device/Head register                  | 1    | 06h    |
| Status register                       | 1    | 07h    |
| Extended error data (vendor specific) | 19   | 08h    |
| State                                 | 1    | 1Bh    |
| Life time stamp (hours)               | 2    | 1Ch    |
|                                       | 30   |        |

Figure 130. Error data structure

The state field contains a value indicating the device state when the command was issued to the device.

| Value   | State                            |
|---------|----------------------------------|
| x0h     | Unknown                          |
| x1h     | Sleep                            |
| x2h     | Standby                          |
| x3h     | Active/Idle                      |
| x4h     | S.M.A.R.T. Off-line or Self-test |
| x5h–xAh | Reserved                         |
| xBh–xFh | Vendor specific                  |

Note: The value of 'x' is vendor specific.

## 15.32.15 Self-test log data structure

The following figure defines the 512 bytes that make up the Self-test log sector. All multibyte fields shown in these data structures are in byte ordering.

---

| Description                   | Byte | Offset    |
|-------------------------------|------|-----------|
| Data structure revision       | 2    | 00h       |
| Self-test number              | 1    | n*18h+02h |
| Self-test execution status    | 1    | n*18h+03h |
| Life time power on hours      | 2    | n*18h+04h |
| Self-test failure check point | 1    | n*18h+06h |
| LBA of first failure          | 4    | n*18h+07h |
| Vendor specific               | 15   | n*18h+0Bh |
| ...                           |      |           |
| Vendor specific               | 2    | 1FAh      |
| Self-test log pointer         | 1    | 1FCh      |
| Reserved                      | 2    | 1FDh      |
| Data structure checksum       | 1    | 1FFh      |
|                               | 512  |           |

*Note: n is 0 through 20*

---

Figure 131. Self-test log data structure

The data structure contains the descriptor of Self-test that the device has performed. Each descriptor is 24 bytes long and the self-test data structure is capable of containing up to 21 descriptors.

After 21 descriptors have been recorded, the oldest descriptor will be overwritten with a new descriptor.

The self-test log pointer points to the most recent descriptor. When there is no descriptor, the value is 0. When there is descriptor(s) the value is 1 through 21.

## 15.32.16 Error reporting

The following table shows the values returned in the Status and Error Registers when specific error conditions are encountered by a device.

| Error condition  | Status Register | Error Register |
|--|-----------------|----------------|
| A S.M.A.R.T. FUNCTION SET command was received by the device without the required key being loaded into the Cylinder High and Cylinder Low registers.                  | 51h             | 04h            |
| A S.M.A.R.T. FUNCTION SET command was received by the device with a subcommand value in the Features Register that is either invalid or not supported by this device.  | 51h             | 04h            |
| A S.M.A.R.T. FUNCTION SET command subcommand other than S.M.A.R.T. ENABLE OPERATIONS was received by the device while the device was in a "S.M.A.R.T. Disabled" state. | 51h             | 04h            |
| The device is unable to read its Attribute Values or Attribute Thresholds data structure.  | 51h             | 10h or 40h     |
| The device is unable to write to its Attribute Values data structure.  | 51h             | 10h or 01h     |

Figure 132. S.M.A.R.T. Error Codes

## 15.33 Standby (E2h/96h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 133. Standby Command (E2h/96h)

The Standby command causes the device to enter the Standby Mode immediately and to set the auto power down time-out parameter (standby timer).

When the Standby mode is entered, the drive is spun down but the interface remains active. If the drive is already spun down, the spin down sequence is not executed.

During the Standby mode the drive will respond to commands but there is a delay while waiting for the spindle to reach operating speed.

The automatic power down sequence is enabled and the timer starts counting down when the drive returns to Idle mode.

## Output Parameters To The Drive

### Sector Count

This is a Time-out Parameter. If the Sector Count is 0, then the automatic power down sequence is disabled. If the Sector Count is non-zero, then the automatic power down sequence is enabled. The time-out intervals are shown as follows:

| Value   | Time-out                |
|---------|-------------------------|
| 0       | Timer disabled          |
| 1-240   | Value * 5 seconds       |
| 241-251 | Value-240) * 30 minutes |
| 252     | 21 minutes              |
| 253     | 8 hours                 |
| 254     | 21 minutes 10 seconds   |
| 255     | 21 minutes 15 seconds   |

When the automatic power down sequence is enabled, the drive will enter Standby mode automatically if the time-out interval expires with no drive access from the host. The time-out interval will be reinitialized if there is a drive access before the time-out interval expires.

## 15.34 Standby Immediate (E0h/94h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 134. Standby Immediate Command (E0h/94h)

The Standby Immediate command causes the device to enter Standby mode immediately.

The device is spun down but the interface remains active. If the device is already spun down, the spin down sequence is not executed.

During the Standby mode the device will respond to commands, but there is a delay while waiting for the spindle to reach operating speed.

The Standby Immediate command will not affect the auto power down time-out parameter.

## 15.35 Write Buffer (E8h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Sector Number                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Sector Number | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder Low                   | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder Low  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Cylinder High                  | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Cylinder High | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | - | 1 | D | - | - | - | -                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | 0   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | -   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 135. Write Buffer Command (E8h)

The Write Buffer command transfers a sector of data from the host to the sector buffer of the device. The sectors of data are transferred through the Data Register 16 bits at a time.

The Read Buffer and Write Buffer commands are synchronized so that sequential Write Buffer and Read Buffer commands access the same 512 bytes within the buffer.



## 15.36 Write DMA (CAh/CBh)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Count  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Sector Number                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Number | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder Low                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder Low  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder High                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder High | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | L | 1 | D | H | H | H | H                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | H | H | H | H |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | R                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| V              | 0   | 0 | V   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | V  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 136. Write DMA Command (CAh/CBh)

The Write DMA command transfers one or more sectors of data from the host to the device. The data is then written to the disk media.

The sectors of data are transferred through the Data Register 16 bits at a time.

The host initializes a slave-DMA channel prior to issuing the command. Data transfers are qualified by DMARQ and are performed by the slave-DMA channel. The device issues only one interrupt per command to indicate that the data transfer has terminated and the status is available.

If an uncorrectable error occurs, the write will be terminated at the failing sector.

### Output parameters to the device

- Sector Count** The number of continuous sectors to be transferred. If 0 is specified, then 256 sectors will be transferred.
- Sector Number** The sector number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)
- Cylinder High/Low** The cylinder number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1)
- H** The head number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)

**R** The retry bit. If set to 1, then retries are disabled. It is ignored, when write cache is enabled. (Ignoring the retry bit is in violation of ATA-2.)

**Input parameters from the device**

**Sector Count** The number of requested sectors not transferred. This will be zero, unless an unrecoverable error occurs.

**Sector Number** The sector number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)

**Cylinder High/Low** The cylinder number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)  
In LBA mode, this register contains current LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1)

**H** The head number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)

## 15.37 Write DMA Queued (CCh)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Count  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Sector Number                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Number | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder Low                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder Low  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder High                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder High | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | L | 1 | D | H | H | H | H                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | H | H | H | H |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| V              | 0   | 0 | V   | 0 | V   | 0   | V   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | 0  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 137. Write DMA Queued Command (CCh)

This command executes in a similar manner to a WRITE DMA command. The device may perform a bus release or it may execute the data transfer without performing a bus release if the data is ready to transfer.

If the device performs a bus release, the host shall reselect the device using the SERVICE command.

Once the data transfer has begun, the device does not perform a bus release until the entire data transfer has been completed.

### Output parameters to the device

- Feature** This parameter is the number of sectors to be transferred. A value of 00h indicates that 256 sectors are to be transferred.
- Sector Count** The Sector Count bits 7–3 (Tag) contain the Tag for the command being delivered.
- Sector Number** This is either the starting sector number or the LBA address bits 7–0.
- Cylinder High/Low** This is either starting cylinder number or the LBA address bits 23–8.
- H** This is either starting head number or the LBA address bits 27–24.

### **Input parameters from the device on bus release**

**Sector Count** Bits 7–3 (Tag) contain the Tag of the command being released to the bus.  
Bit 2 (REL) is set to one.  
Bit 1 (I/O) is cleared to zero.  
Bit 0 (C/D) is cleared to zero.

**Sector Number, Cylinder High/Low, H** n/a.

**SRV** This parameter is cleared to zero when the device performs a bus release. This bit is set to 1 when the device is ready to transfer data.

### **Input parameters from the device on Command Complete**

**Sector Count** Bits 7–3 (Tag) contain the Tag of the completed command.  
Bit 2 (REL) is cleared to 0.  
Bit 1 (I/O) is set to one.  
Bit 0 (C/D) is set to one.

**Sector Number, Cylinder High/Low, H**

These parameters represent the sector address of unrecoverable error—applicable only when an unrecoverable error has occurred.

**SRV** This parameter means cleared to 0.

## 15.38 Write Long (32h/33h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1                             | Sector Count  | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | V |
| Sector Number                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Number | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder Low                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder Low  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder High                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder High | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | L | 1 | D | H | H | H | H                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | H | H | H | H |
| Command                        | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | R                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | V   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | V  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 138. Write Long Command (32h/33h)

The Write Long command transfers the data and the ECC bytes of the designated sector from the host to the device. The data and the ECC bytes are then written to the disk media.

After 512 bytes of data have been transferred, the device will keep setting DRQ=1 to indicate that the device is ready to receive the ECC bytes from the host. The data is transferred 16 bits at a time and the ECC bytes are transferred 8 bits at a time. The number of ECC bytes is 4 or 40 depending upon the setting of the Set Feature option. The default number after power-on is 4 bytes.

### Output parameters to the device

**Sector Count** This parameter represents the number of continuous sectors to be transferred. The Sector Count must be set to one.

**Sector Number** This parameter represents the sector number of the sector to be transferred. (L=0)

In LBA mode, this register contains LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)

**Cylinder High/Low** This parameter represents the cylinder number of the sector to be transferred. (L=0)

In LBA mode, this register contains LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1)

**H** This parameter represents the head number of the sector to be transferred. (L=0)

In LBA mode, this register contains LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)

**R** This parameter represents the retry bit. If set to one, then retries are disabled.

**Input parameters from the device**

**Sector Count** This parameter represents the number of requested sectors not transferred.

**Sector Number** This parameter represents the sector number of the sector to be transferred.  
(L=0)

In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)

**Cylinder High/Low** This parameter represents the cylinder number of the sector to be transferred.  
(L=0)

In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High).  
(L=1)

**H** This parameter represents the head number of the sector to be transferred.  
(L=0)

In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)

The drive internally uses 40 bytes of ECC on all data read or writes. The 4 byte mode of operation is provided via an emulation technique. As a consequence of this emulation it is recommended that the 40 byte ECC mode be used for all tests to confirm the operation of the ECC hardware. Unexpected results may occur if such testing is performed using the 4 byte mode.

## 15.39 Write Multiple (C5h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Count  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Sector Number                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Number | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder Low                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder Low  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder High                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder High | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | L | 1 | D | H | H | H | H                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | H | H | H | H |
| Command                        | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | V   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | V  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 139. Write Multiple Command (C5h)

The Write Multiple command transfers one or more sectors from the host to the device, the data is written to the disk media.

Command execution is identical to the Write Sectors command except that an interrupt is generated for each block—as defined by the Set Multiple command—instead of for each sector. The sectors are transferred through the Data Register 16 bits at a time.

### Output parameters to the device

**Sector Count** This parameter represents the number of continuous sectors to be transferred. If zero is specified, then 256 sectors will be transferred.

**Sector Number** This parameter represents the sector number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)

In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)

**Cylinder High/Low** This parameter represents the cylinder number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)

In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1)

**H** This parameter represents the head number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)

In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)

### Input Parameters From The Device

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>Sector Count</b>      | This parameter represents the number of requested sectors not transferred. This number will be zero—unless an unrecoverable error occurs.           |
| <b>Sector Number</b>     | The sector number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)<br>In LBA mode this register contains the current LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)                       |
| <b>Cylinder High/Low</b> | The cylinder number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)<br>In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1)    |
| <b>H</b>                 | This parameter represents the head number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)<br>In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 24–27. (L=1) |



## 15.40 Write Sectors (30h/31h)

| Command Block Output Registers |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Command Block Input Registers |               |           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Register                       | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0                             | Register      | 7         | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Data                           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Data          | -         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Feature                        | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | -                             | Error         | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Sector Count                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Count  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Sector Number                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Sector Number | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder Low                   | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder Low  | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Cylinder High                  | V | V | V | V | V | V | V | V                             | Cylinder High | V         | V | V | V | V | V | V | V |
| Device/Head                    | 1 | L | 1 | D | H | H | H | H                             | Device/Head   | -         | - | - | - | H | H | H | H |
| Command                        | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | R                             | Status        | see below |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

| Error Register |     |   |     |   |     |     |     |
|----------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|-----|-----|
| 7              | 6   | 5 | 4   | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| CRC            | UNC | 0 | IDN | 0 | ABT | T0N | AMN |
| 0              | 0   | 0 | V   | 0 | V   | 0   | 0   |

| Status Register |     |    |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----------------|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 7               | 6   | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
| BSY             | RDY | DF | DSC | DRQ | COR | IDX | ERR |
| 0               | V   | V  | V   | -   | 0   | -   | V   |

Figure 140. Write Sectors Command (30h/31h)

The Write Sectors command transfers one or more sectors from the host to the device; the data is then written to the disk media.

The sectors are transferred through the Data Register 16 bits at a time.

If an uncorrectable error occurs, the write will be terminated at the failing sector.

### Output parameters to the device

- Sector Count** This parameter represents the number of continuous sectors to be transferred. If zero is specified, then 256 sectors will be transferred.
- Sector Number** The sector number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)
- Cylinder High/Low** The cylinder number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1)
- H** The head number of the first sector to be transferred. (L=0)  
In LBA mode this register contains LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)
- R** This parameter represents the retry bit. If it is set to one, retries are disabled. If it is ignored, write cache is enabled. (Ignoring the retry bit is in violation of ATA-2.)

### Input parameters from the device

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>Sector Count</b>      | This parameter represents the number of requested sectors not transferred. This will be zero, unless an unrecoverable error occurs.               |
| <b>Sector Number</b>     | The sector number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)<br>In LBA mode, this register contains current LBA bits 0–7. (L=1)                        |
| <b>Cylinder High/Low</b> | The cylinder number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)<br>In LBA mode, this register contains current LBA bits 8–15 (Low), 16–23 (High). (L=1) |
| <b>H</b>                 | The head number of the last transferred sector. (L=0)<br>In LBA mode this register contains current LBA bits 24–27. (L=1)                         |

# Appendix

## I. Commands Support Coverage

Following table is provided to facilitate the understanding of DTLA-3XXXXX command support coverage comparing to the ATA-5 defined command set. The column entitled "Implementation" shows the capability of DTLA-3XXXXX for those commands.

| Command Code | Command Name                        | Implementation for DTLA-3XXXXX | ATA-5 Category Type |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| 00h          | NOP                                 | Yes                            | Optional            |
| 03h          | CFA REQUEST EXTENDED ERROR CODE     | No                             | Optional (7)        |
| 08h          | DEVICE RESET                        | No                             | Optional (7)        |
| 1xh          | RECALIBRATE                         | Yes                            | Obsoleted           |
| 20h          | READ SECTOR(S) (w/ retry)           | Yes                            | Mandatory           |
| 21h          | READ SECTOR(S) (w/o retry)          | Yes                            | Obsoleted           |
| 22h          | READ SECTOR(S) (w/ retry)           | Yes                            | Obsoleted           |
| 23h          | READ LONG (w/o retry)               | Yes                            | Obsoleted           |
| 30h          | WRITE SECTOR(S) (w/ retry)          | Yes                            | Mandatory           |
| 31h          | WRITE SECTOR(S) (w/o retry)         | Yes                            | Obsoleted           |
| 32h          | WRITE LONG (w/ retry)               | Yes                            | Obsoleted           |
| 33h          | WRITE LONG (w/o retry)              | Yes                            | Obsoleted           |
| 38h          | CFA TRANSLATE SECTORS W/O ERASE     | No                             | Optional (7)        |
| 3Ch          | WRITE VERIFY (2)                    | Vendor specific                | Obsoleted           |
| 40h          | READ VERIFY SECTOR (S) (w/retry)    | Yes                            | Mandatory           |
| 41h          | READ VERIFY SECTORS (S) (w/o retry) | Yes                            | Obsoleted           |
| 50h          | FORMAT TRACK                        | Yes                            | Obsoleted           |
| 7xh          | SEEK                                | Yes                            | Mandatory           |
| 87h          | CFA TRANSLATE SECTORS               | No                             | Optional            |
| 90h          | EXECUTE DEVICE DIAGNOSTIC           | Yes                            | Mandatory           |
| 91h          | INITIALIZE DEVICE PARAMETERS        | Yes                            | Mandatory           |
| 92h          | DOWNLOAD MICROCODE                  | Reserved                       | Optional            |
| 94h-99h      | Reserved                            | Reserved                       | Reserved            |
| A0h          | PACKET                              | No                             | Not to be used      |
| A1h          | IDENTIFY PACKET DEVICE              | No                             | Not to be used      |
| A2H          | SERVICE                             | Yes                            | Not to be used      |
| B0h          | S.M.A.R.T. FUNCTION SET             | Yes                            | Optional - (5)      |
| C0h          | CFA ERASE SECTORS                   | No                             | Optional            |
| C4h          | READ MULTIPLE                       | Yes                            | Mandatory           |
| C5h          | WRITE MULTIPLE                      | Yes                            | Mandatory           |
| C6h          | SET MULTIPLE MODE                   | Yes                            | Mandatory           |
| C7h          | READ DMA QUEUED                     | Yes                            | Optional            |
| C8h          | READ DMA (w/ retry)                 | Yes                            | Mandatory           |
| C9h          | READ DMA (w/o retry)                | Yes                            | Obsoleted           |

Figure 141. Command coverage (1 of 2)

| Command Code | Command Name                  | Implementation for DTLA-3XXXXX | ATA-5 Command Type |
|--------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------|
| CAh          | WRITE DMA (w/ retry)          | Yes                            | Mandatory          |
| CBh          | WRITE DMA (w/o retry)         | Yes                            | Obsoleted          |
| CCh          | WRITE DMA QUEUED              | Yes                            | Optional           |
| CDh          | CFA WRITE MULTIPLE W/O ERASE  | No                             | Optional - (7)     |
| DAh          | GET MEDIA STATUS              | No                             | Optional (7)       |
| DEh          | MEDIA LOCK                    | No                             | Optional (7)       |
| DFh          | MEDIA UNLOCK                  | No                             | Optional (7)       |
| E0h          | STANDBY IMMEDIATE             | Yes                            | Mandatory          |
| E1h          | IDLE IMMEDIATE                | Yes                            | Mandatory          |
| E2h          | STANDBY                       | Yes                            | Mandatory          |
| E3h          | IDLE                          | Yes                            | Mandatory          |
| E4h          | READ BUFFER                   | Yes                            | Optional           |
| E5h          | CHECK POWER MODE              | Yes                            | Mandatory          |
| E6h          | SLEEP                         | Yes                            | Mandatory          |
| E7h          | FLUSH CACHE                   | Yes                            | Mandatory          |
| E8h          | WRITE BUFFER                  | Yes                            | Optional           |
| ECh          | IDENTIFY DEVICE               | Yes                            | Mandatory          |
| EDh          | MEDIA EJECT                   | No                             | Optional (7)       |
| EEh          | IDENTIFY DEVICE DMA           | No                             | Obsoleted          |
| EFh          | SET FEATURES                  | Yes                            | Mandatory          |
| F0h          | SENSE CONDITION               | Vendor specific                | Vendor specific    |
| F1h          | SECURITY SET PASSWORD         | Yes                            | Optional (6)       |
| F2h          | SECURITY UNLOCK               | Yes                            | Optional (6)       |
| F3h          | SECURITY ERASE PREPARE        | Yes                            | Optional (6)       |
| F4h          | SECURITY ERASE UNIT           | Yes                            | Optional (6)       |
| F5h          | SECURITY FREEZE LOCK          | Yes                            | Optional (6)       |
| F6h          | SECURITY DISABLE PASSWORD     | Yes                            | Optional (6)       |
| F7h          | FORMAT UNIT                   | Vendor specific                | Vendor specific    |
| F8h          | READ NATIVE MAX ADDRESS       | Yes                            | Optional           |
| F9h          | SET MAX ADDRESS               | Yes                            | Optional           |
| FAh          | ENABLE/DISABLE DELAYED WRITE  | No                             | Vendor specific    |
| FBh          | Vendor specific               | Reserved                       | Vendor specific    |
|              | Reserved: all remaining codes | Reserved                       | Reserved           |

**Note:**

- (1) *These commands have two command codes and appear in this table twice, once for each command code.*
- (2) *The WRITE VERIFY command implemented vendor specific. The operation is same as WRITE SECTORS and verification is not performed.*
- (3) *Protected Area Feature Set*
- (4) *Power Management Feature Set*
- (5) *S.M.A.R.T. Function Set*
- (6) *Security Mode Feature Set*
- (7) *Removable*

Figure 141. Command coverage (2 of 2)

## II. SET FEATURES Command Support Coverage

The following table provides a list of Feature Registers, Feature Names, and implementation for the DTLA-3XXXXX models. The "Implementation" column indicates with a "Yes" or "No" whether or not the DTLA-3XXXXX models have the capability of executing the command in comparison to the ATA/ATAPI-5 defined command set. For detailed operation see Section 15.28, "Set Features (EFh)" on page 148.

| Features Register | Features Name                                  | Implementation for DTLA-3XXXXX |
|-------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| 02h               | Enable write cache                             | Yes                            |
| 03h               | Set transfer mode                              | Yes                            |
| 05h               | Enable Advanced Power Management               | Yes                            |
| 06h               | Enable Power-up in Standby feature set         | Yes                            |
| 07h               | Power-up in Standby feature set device spin-up | Yes                            |
| 09h               | Enable Address Offset mode                     | Yes                            |
| 42h               | Enable Automatic Acoustic Management           | Yes                            |
| 44h               | Set vendor specific bytes ECC                  | Yes                            |
| 55h               | Disable read look-ahead feature                | Yes                            |
| 5Dh               | Enable release interrupt                       | Yes                            |
| 5Eh               | Enable SERVICE interrupt                       | No                             |
| 66h               | Disable reverting to power on defaults         | Yes                            |
| 82h               | Disable write cache                            | Yes                            |
| 85h               | Disable Advanced Power Management              | Yes                            |
| 86h               | Disable Power up in Standby mode               | Yes                            |
| 89h               | Disable Address Offset mode                    | Yes                            |
| 95h               | Enable Media Status Notification               | No                             |
| AAh               | Enable read look-ahead feature                 | Yes                            |
| BBh               | Set 4 bytes ECC                                | Yes                            |
| C2h               | Disable Automatic Acoustic Management          | Yes                            |
| CCh               | Enable reverting to power on defaults          | Yes                            |
| DDh               | Disable release interrupt                      | Yes                            |
| EEh               | Disable SERVICE interrupt                      | No                             |
| others            | Reserved                                       | Reserved                       |

Figure 142. SET FEATURES command coverage

This page intentionally left blank.

---

# Index

## A

Abbreviations used, 1  
Acoustics, 56  
Actuator, 7  
Address Offset, 93  
Addressing of HDD registers, 40  
Advanced Power Management, 92  
Appendix A, 189  
AT signal connector, 25  
Automatic Acoustic Management, 93  
Average latency, 12

## B

Buffering, 13

## C

Cable noise interference, 50  
Cabling, 40  
CE Mark, 59  
Command descriptions, 101  
Command Overhead, 10  
Command Protocol, 95  
Commands, 87  
Commands Support Coverage, 189  
Connector location, 25  
Control Electronics, 7  
CSA standard conformity, 57  
C-Tick Mark, 59  
Cylinder allocation, 21  
Cylinder Switch Time, 11

## D

Data integrity, 19, 50  
Data loss, 50, 54, 55, 81  
Data loss at Power off, 19  
Data reliability, 51  
Data Transfer Speed, 13  
DC power connector, 25  
DC power requirements, 48  
Defect flagging, 17, 23  
Deviations from standard, 65  
Diagnostic Codes, 76  
Dimensions, 51  
DMA commands, 99  
DMA queued commands, 99  
DMA timings, 31

Drive ready time, 12  
DRQ interval time, 30

## E

ECC On-The-Fly correction, 51  
Electrical interface, 25  
Electromagnetic compatibility, 58  
Energy consumption efficiency, 50  
Equipment status, 19

## F

Flammability, 58  
Formatted capacity, 9  
Full Stroke Seek, 11

## G

General features, 3  
German Safety Mark, 57

## H

Head disk assembly, 7  
Head Switch Time, 11  
Head unload and actuator lock, 53  
Hole locations, 52  
Host Protected Area Function, 88  
Humidity, 47

## I

IEC compliance, 57  
Input voltage, 48  
Interface logic signal levels, 29

## J

Jumper settings, 41

## L

Labels, 57  
LBA Addressing Mode, 78  
Logical CHS Addressing Mode, 78

## M

Mechanical positioning, 10  
Mechanical specifications, 51  
Mode transition times, 15

## **N**

Non-data commands, 98

## **O**

Operating conditions, 47

Operating mode definition, 15

## **P**

Password Lost, 86

Passwords, 83

Performance Characteristics, 10

PIO Data In commands, 95

PIO Data Out commands, 96

PIO timings, 30

PList physical format, 17, 23

Power management, 80

Power modes, 80

Power supply current, 48

Power supply generated ripple, 49

Power-Up In Standby, 92

Preventive maintenance, 50

## **R**

Random access, 14

Reassign Function, 91

Registers, 67

Reliability, 50

Reset, 75

Reset timings, 29

## **S**

S.M.A.R.T., 81

Safety, 57

Sector Addressing Mode, 78

Security, 82

Seek Overlap, 90

SET FEATURES Command Support Coverage,  
191

Shipped format, 17, 23

Shipping conditions, 47

Shock, 54

Signal definitions, 26

Simple sequential access, 13

Single Track Seek Time, 12

Sound power levels, 56

Standby timer, 80

Start up current, 49

Start/Stop, 50

## **T**

Temperature, 47

Throughput, 13

## **U**

UL standard conformity, 57

Ultra DMA timings, 32

## **V**

Vibration, 54

## **W**

Write cache, 19, 91





© International Business Machines Corporation 2002

[www.ibm.com/harddrive](http://www.ibm.com/harddrive)

**IBM Technology Group Support Center**  
Telephone: 888.IBM.5214 or 507.286-5825  
E-mail: [drive@us.ibm.com](mailto:drive@us.ibm.com)

**Singapore Technology Group Support Center**  
Telephone: (65)6418.9595 or 1800.418.9595  
E-mail: [drive@sg.ibm.com](mailto:drive@sg.ibm.com)

**UK Technology Group Support Center**  
Telephone: 44.1475.898.125  
E-mail: [drive@uk.ibm.com](mailto:drive@uk.ibm.com)

**Germany Technology Group Support Center**  
Telephone: 49.7032.153050  
E-mail: [drive@de.ibm.com](mailto:drive@de.ibm.com)

**IBM Storage Technology Division**  
5600 Cottle Road  
San Jose, CA 95193  
[www.ibm.com/storage](http://www.ibm.com/storage)

Printed in the United States of America  
05-2002

All Rights Reserved

IBM and Deskstar are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation.

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

Product description data represents IBM's design objectives and is provided for comparative purposes; actual results may vary depending on a variety of factors. Product claims are true as of the date of the first printing. This product data does not constitute a warranty. Questions regarding IBM warranty terms or the methodology used to derive this data should be referred to an IBM representative. Data subject to change without notice.

References in this publication to IBM products, programs, or services do not imply that IBM intends to make them available in all countries in which IBM operates.

Document # S07N-4780-04

Publication #2818